# PROJECT MANUAL

## FOR

# Fort Walton Beach Indian Museum
## and Gift Shop
### Fort Walton Beach, Florida

**January 2023**

## For Construction

**Prepared By**

**JDF Architecture, LLC.**
**201 Hollywood Blvd, NE**
**Fort Walton Beach, Florida 32548**
**Tel 850.496.2166 | WWW.JDFARCHITECTURE.COM**

# INDEX

-- COVER SHEET
-- INDEX

**DIVISION 0: CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS:**

-- 000100 INVITATION TO BID (SEE SEPARATE DOCUMENT)

**DIVISION 1: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:**

-- NOT REQUIRED

**DIVISION 2: EXISTING CONDITIONS:**

-- NOT REQUIRED

**DIVISION 3: CONCRETE:**

-- 031000 CONCRETE FORMWORK
-- 032000 CONRETE REINFORCEMENT
-- 033000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

**DIVISION 4: MASONRY:**

-- 042000 UNIT MASONRY

**DIVISION 5: METALS:**

-- 051200 STRUCTURAL STEEL
-- 054000 COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
-- 055000 METAL FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 6: WOOD AND PLASTICS:**

-- 061000 ROUGH CARPENTRY
-- 061600 SHEATHING
-- 064000 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

**DIVISION 7: THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION:**

-- 072100 THERMAL INSULATION
-- 076200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
-- 079200 JOINT SEALANTS

**DIVISION 8: OPENINGS:**

-- 081113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
-- 082110 FLUSH WOOD DOORS
-- 084100 ALUMINUM ENTRANCES & STOREFRONTS
-- 087100 FINISHED HARDWARE
-- 088000 GLASS AND GLAZING

**DIVISION 9: FINISHES:**

-- 092500 GYPSUM DRYWALL
-- 092423 PORTLAND CEMEMT STUCCO
-- 092813 CEMENTITIOUS BACKING BOARD
-- 093000 TILE
-- 095110 ACOUSTICAL CEILING PANEL
-- 099113 EXTERIOR PAINTING
-- 099123 INTERIOR PAINTING

**DIVISION 10: SPECIALITIES:**

-- 102800 TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES
-- 104413 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS
-- 104416 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

**DIVISION 22: PLUMBING**

-- 220513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS
-- 220516 EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS
-- 220517 SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS
-- 220518 ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
-- 220523 GENERAL DUTY VALVES
-- 220529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
-- 220548.13 VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
-- 220719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
-- 221116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
-- 221119 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
-- 221319 SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
-- 224213.13 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
-- 224213.16 COMMERCIAL URINALS
-- 224216.13 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
-- 224216.16 COMMERCIAL SINKS
-- 224716 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

**DIVISION 23: HEATING, VENTILATION and COOLING**

-- 230513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS
-- 230548.13 VIBRATION CONTROL FOR HVAC
-- 230593 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING
-- 230713 DUCT INSTALLATION
-- 230923.12 CONTROL DAMPERS
-- 232300 REFRIGERANT PIPING
-- 233113 METAL DUCTS
-- 233300 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
-- 233713 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS AND GRILLES
-- 236200 PACKAGE COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSOR UNIT
-- 237313.16 INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR HANDLING UNIT
-- 237416.11 PACKAGED, SMALL CAPACITY ROOFTOP UNIT
-- 238126 SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONERS
-- 238126.13 MINI-SPLIT SYSTEM

**DIVISION 26: ELECTRICAL**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| -- | 260010 | SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL |
| -- | 260519 | LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES |
| -- | 260526 | GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| -- | 260529 | HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| -- | 260533 | RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| -- | 260553 | IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| -- | 260526 | GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS |
| -- | 260923 | LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES |
| -- | 262416 | PANELBOARDS |
| -- | 262726 | WIRING DEVICES |
| -- | 262816 | ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS |

**DIVISION 32: EARTHWORK**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| -- | 323116 | TERMITE CONTROL |

END OF INDEX

# SECTION 031000

# CONCRETE FORMWORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 032000 - Concrete Reinforcement.

B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

1.3 WORK INSTALLED BUT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

Build in anchors, inserts, bolts, hangers, sleeves, ferrules, water stops and other accessories.

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

Design, construct and erect formwork per ACI 347R-94, Guide to Formwork for Concrete.

1.5 ALLOWABLE TOLERANCES

In accordance with ACI-301-96 as listed in Table 4.3. I-Tolerances for Formed Surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Concealed concrete: No.2 Common Southern Pine, S4S, or better.

B. Exposed Concrete: B-B Plyform, Class I or II, EXT -AP A, Metal or Fiberglass forms may be used.

C. Construction joint forms for slabs-on-grade: Key-type steel formers, Vulcan Screed Joints, Burke Keyed Kold Joint Form, Dayton Sure-Grip G-20, or equal.

D. Expansion joint filler: Asphalt impregnated, premolded fiberboard by full thickness of slab or joint, ASTM D994-94.

E. Form-coating: Non-staining mineral oil.

F. Form ties: Snap-off type which will break off at least W' below surface of concrete.

2.2 EARTH FORMS

Where soil is firm enough to permit cutting to true size, concrete may be placed without forms.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ERECTING

A. Erect forms to obtain shapes, designs and dimensions indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent

leakage. Brace, shore and tie forms together to maintain position without sagging or bulging.

B. Provide 3/4" chamfering at comers (exposed or unexposed).

C. Prepare insides of forms so that concrete will have a smooth, uniform finish, free from fms, stone pockets, voids and other surface defects.

D. For slabs-on-grade, provide construction joint forms where concrete placement terminates at the end of a day or because of other reasons.

E. Where soil conditions are such that concrete cannot be placed without forms, and where other conditions cause trenches to be opened wider than footing or slab widths, erect forms for footing or slabs.

3.2 PREPARING

A. Prepare insides of forms so that concrete will have a smooth, uniform finish free of surface defects.

B. Coat forms before reinforcement steel is placed. Where mill-oiled forming material is used, follow manufacturer's instructions for recoating. Where forming material is not mill-oiled, coat forms before each use.

C. Before reusing forms, thoroughly clean them and remove projecting nails or similar devices.

3.3 FORM REMOVAL

Remove forms in such a manner and such time as to insure safety of structure and to avoid chipping and spalling of concrete. Refer to Section 6.2 of ACI 318-95, Section 6.2 of the requirements. Commentary to ACI 318-95, and Section 3.7 of ACI 347R-94 for form removal

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 032000

# CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 031000 - Concrete Formwork.

B. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

The placement of all concrete reinforcement shall be monitored.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit warranty from mill or supplier stating that materials meet requirements of referenced ASTM and ACI Standards.

B. Submit one reproducible sepia and one print of shop drawings. Only marked up sepia will be returned. Detail reinforcing steel in accord with ACI SP-66 94, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Shop drawings shall indicate bending and placement of reinforcement as well as sleeve and built-in work locations. Submit shop drawings for similar slabs and/or full column stacks at the same time.

C. Shop drawings shall include the following note completed and signed by the Contractor: The data submitted does not contain material deviation from requirements of contract documents except as follows:

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to project site in bundles marked with metal tags for easy identification.

B. Handle and store materials to prevent contamination.

C. Deliver and store welding electrodes in accordance with American Welding Society D 1.4-92.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REINFORCEMENT STEEL

A. ASTM A615-95c, Grade 60.

B. Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars per ASTM A775-95a.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT WIRE

Welded steel wire fabric, ASTM A185-94.

2.3 BAR SUPPORTS

A. Bar supports and spacing of same shall be as per recommendations set forth by Chapter 3 of the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, 24th Edition, 1986.

B. Steel wire bar supports in concrete where soffits are exposed to view, weather, or liquid shall be Class

1 or Class 2, Types A or B; Class 3 is acceptable for other uses.

2.4 OTHER SUPPORTS

Concrete brick may be used to support reinforcement to obtain proper clearance from earth and rigidity of reinforcement under concreting operations.

2.5 TIE WIRE

Wire shall be 16-1/2 gauge or heavier, black-annealed.

2.6 FABRICATING

In accordance with CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, 24th Edition, 1986.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDITION OF SURFACES

Maintain reinforcement surfaces free of mud, oil or other coatings which might impair band as described in Section 7.4 of ACI 318-95. Rust or mill scale is acceptable provided the minimum dimensions are not less than applicable ASTM Standards. Loose rust scale to be removed with wire brush.

3.2 INSTALLING REINFORCING STEEL

A. Handle, place and tie reinforcement steel in accordance with "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete, " ACI 318-95 and CRSI publication "Placing Reinforcing Bars," 4th Edition, 1981.

B. All reinforcement bars shall be supported and secured as directed in ACI 315-94 and CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, 24th Edition, 1986.

C. For all splices, unless noted otherwise, provide the following lap splice length of reinforcement steel:

1. In concrete member: Class B
2. In masonry member: 48 bar diameters
3. Do not splice reinforcement steel except as authorized by Architect.

D. Accomplish welding in accordance with American Welding Society publication "Recommended Practices for Welding Reinforcing Steel, Metal Inserts, and Connections in Reinforced Concrete Construction", AWS D1.4-92.

E. Bend bars cold. Do not field bend bars partially embedded in concrete except as specifically permitted by Architect. Do not heat or cut bars with a torch.

3.3 INSTALLING WELDED WIRE FABRIC

A. For Slabs-on-Grade:

1. Install welded wire fabric after vapor barrier (or under floor waterproofing, if applicable) has been placed.
2. Locate welded wire fabric in center third of slabs.

B. For Slabs on Metal Form:

1. Provide W.W.F. 6x6 – W1.4 x W1.4, unless noted otherwise
2. Locate welded wire fabric at mid-depth of slab measured between top of slab and top of metal

form.

C. Lap side one full mesh plus 2 inches. Lap end two full meshes. Offset end laps in adjacent width to prevent continuous laps.

3.4 CONCRETE PROTECTION FOR REINFORCEMENT

A. Protect reinforcing by thickness of concrete indicated on Contract Drawings.

B. Variation from clear cover shall conform to Section 7.5 of ACI 318-95.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 033000

# CAST IN-PLACE CONCRETE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 SUMMARY:

A. Extent of concrete work is shown on drawings.

B. Concrete curbwork is specified in Section 02513 - Asphalt/Concrete Paving and Curbwork.

1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit data for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, patching compounds, joint systems, curing compounds, and others as requested by Architect.

B. Shop Drawings; Reinforcement: Submit original shop drawings prepared for fabrication, bending, and placement of concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI 315 "Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, and arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures. Submit shop drawings in pdf format.

C. Laboratory Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials and mix design test.

D. Materials Certificates: Provide materials certificates in lieu of materials laboratory test reports when permitted by Architect. Materials certificates shall be signed by manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements. Provide certification from admixture manufacturers that chloride content complies with specification requirements.

E. Mix Designs: Provide design mixture for each concrete mixture to be used. Mix submittal to include proportions of materials and documentation of average strength in accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 5.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:

ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete".
Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI), "Manual of Standard Practice".

B. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a testing laboratory acceptable to Architect to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.

C. Materials and installed work may require testing and retesting at anytime during progress of work. Tests, including retesting of rejected materials for installed work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Protection of Footings Against Freezing: Cover completed work at footing level with sufficient temporary or permanent cover as required to protect footings and adjacent subgrade against possibility of freezing; maintain cover for time period as necessary.

B. Protect adjacent finish materials against spatter during concrete placement.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REINFORCING MATERIALS:

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, plain, cold-drawn steel.

C. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, welded steel wire fabric, flat sheets only.

D. Supports for Reinforcement: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI specifications.

For slabs-on-grade, use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs. (Do not use brick). Space supports for welded wire fabric at not more than 36" centers.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS:

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.

Use one brand of cement throughout project, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

B. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Type C.

C. Normal Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, and as herein specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.
Local aggregates not complying with ASTM C 33 but which have shown by special test or actual service to produce concrete of adequate strength and durability may be used when acceptable to the Architect.

D. Water: Drinkable.

E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures. The use of air-entraining admixture is not allowed in floor slab receiving hard trowel finish.

F. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A, and containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

G. High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (Super Plasticizer): ASTM C 494, Type F or Type G and containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

H. Water-Reducing, Non-Chloride Accelerator Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E, and containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

I. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D, and containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

J. Prohibited Admixtures: Calcium chloride thyocyanates or admixtures containing more than 2.1 percent chloride ions are not permitted.

2.3 RELATED MATERIALS:

A. Vapor Retarder:" Provide vapor retarder cover over prepared base material where indicated below slabs on grade. Use only materials which are resistant to decay when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154, as follows:
Polyethethene sheet not less than 10 mils thick.

B. Non-Shrink Grout: CRD-C 621, factory pre-mixed grout (non-metalic).

C. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per sq. yd. complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.

D. Moisture-Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ASTM C 171.

Waterproof paper.
Polyethylene film.
Polyethylene-coated burlap.

E. Liquid Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Liquid type membrane-forming curing compound complying with ASTM C 309, Type I, Class A. Moisture loss not more than 0.055 sq./sq. cm. when applied at 200 sq. ft./gal.

F. Bonding Compound: Polyvinyl acetate or acrylic base.

G. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two component material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces. Provide material "Type", "Grade", and "Class" to suit project requirements.

2.5 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES:

A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete by either laboratory trial batch or field experience methods as specified in ACI 301.

B. Submit written reports to Architect and Structural Engineer of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of work. Do not begin concrete production until mixes have been reviewed by Architect.

C. Design mixes to provide normal weight concrete with the following properties, as indicated on drawings and schedules:

D. Admixtures:

Use water-reducing admixture or high range water-reducing admixture (super plasticizer) in concrete as required for placement and workability.

Use non-chloride accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50 degrees F (10 deg C).

Use high-range water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for industrial slabs, architectural concrete, parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with water/cement ratios below 0.50.

Use admixtures for water-reducing and set-control in strict compliance with manufacturer's directions.

E. Water-Cement Ratio:

Provide concrete for following conditions with maximum water-cement (W/C) ratios as follows:
Subjected to freezing and thawing; W/C 0.50.

F. Slump Limits:

Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows:
Ramps, slabs, and sloping surfaces: Not more than 4".

Reinforced foundation systems: Not less than 1" and not more than 4".

Concrete containing HRWR admixture (super-plasticizer): Not more than 8" after addition of HRWR to site-verified 2"-3" slump concrete.

Other concrete: Not less than 1" nor more than 4".

2.6 CONCRETE MIXING:

A. Ready-Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 94, and as herein specified.

During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C 94 may be required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL:

A. Coordinate the installation of joint materials and vapor retarders with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

3.2 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION:

A. Following leveling and tamping of base for slabs on grade, place vapor retarder sheeting with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour.

B. Lap joints 6" and seal with appropriate tape.

3.3 PLACING REINFORCEMENT:

A. Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars", for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as herein specified. Avoiding cutting or puncturing vapor retarder during reinforcement placement and concreting operations.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations. Provide, locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.

D. Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverages for concrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Provide chairs to center welded wire in slab depth.

3.4 JOINTS:

A. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints as indicated or, if not indicated, locate so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Architect.

B. Provide keyways at least 1-1/2" deep in construction joints in slabs, and between walls and footings; accepted bulkheads designed for this purpose may be used for slabs.

C. Place construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, except as otherwise indicated.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct isolation joints in slabs-on-ground at points of contact between slabs-on-ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.

Joint filler and sealant materials are specified in Division-7 sections of these specifications.

E. Contraction (Control) Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct contraction joints in slabs-on-ground to form panels of patterns as shown. Use saw cuts 1/8" x 1/4 slab depth or inserts 1/4" wide x 1/4 of slab depth, unless otherwise indicated. Use “green saw” to cut slab as soon as finishing is completed.

3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT:

A. Preplacement Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast-in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing concrete where form coatings are not used.

B. General: Comply with ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete", and as herein specified.

Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete which has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable to its final location to avoid segregation.

C. Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete in accordance with ACI 309.

D. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations not farther than visible effectiveness of machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6" into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. At each insertion limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing segregation of mix.

E. Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placing of a panel or section is completed.

F. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.

G. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strikeoff. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface, free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.

H. Cold Weather Placing: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength which could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures, in compliance with ACI 306.

I. Hot Weather Placing: When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305.

3.6 FINISHES:

A. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed-to-view, and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic tile, paint, or other thin film finish coating, system.

After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power- driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and with surface leveled to tolerances of $F_F$ 20 - $F_L$ 17. Grind smooth surface defects which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.

B. Trowel and Fine Broom Finish: Where ceramic tile is to be installed with thin-set mortar, apply trowel finish as specified, then immediately follow with slightly scarifying surface by fine brooming.

C. Non-Slip Broom Finish: Apply non-slip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.7 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION:

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting, keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least 7 days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.

B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing and sealing compound, by moist curing, by moisture-retaining cover curing, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.

1. Provide moisture curing by following methods.

Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
Continuous water-fog spray.
Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs and to exterior slabs, walks, and curbs, as follows:

Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power-spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

Do not use membrane curing compounds on surfaces which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, glue-down carpet), painting, and other coatings and finish materials, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.

C. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including undersides of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

D. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of appropriate curing method.

E. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture-retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.

F. Sealer and Dustproofer: Apply a second coat of specified curing and sealing compound only to surfaces given a first coat.

3.8 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS:

A. Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Architect.

Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but, in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat the area to be patched with specified bonding agent. Place patching mortar after bonding compound has dried.

B. Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets; fins and other projections on surface; and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar, or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

3.10 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING DURING CONSTRUCTION:

A. Employ a testing laboratory to perform tests and to submit test reports.

B. Sampling and testing for quality control during placement of concrete may include the following, as directed by Architect.

C. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.

Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge for each day's pour of each type of concrete; additional tests when concrete consistency seems to have changed.

Air Content: ASTM C 173, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete; ASTM C 231 pressure method for normal weight concrete; one for each day's pour of each type of air-entrained concrete.

Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and below, and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above; and each time a set of compression test specimens made.

Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of 4 standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field-cure test specimens are required.

Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour exceeding 5 cu. yds. plus additional sets for each 50 cu. yds. over and above the first 25 cu. yds. of each concrete class placed in any one day; one specimen tested at 7 days, two specimens tested at 28 days, and one specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required.

When frequency of testing will provide less than 5 strength tests for a given class of concrete, conduct testing from at least 5 randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than 5 are used.

When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cu. yds., strength test may be waived by Architect if, in his judgement, adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.

When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.

Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength, and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

D. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect, Structural Engineer and Contractor within 24 hours after tests. Reports of compressive strength tests shall contain the project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing service, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in structure, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials; compressive breaking strength and type of break for both 7-day tests and 28-day tests.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04200

UNIT MASONRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 05500 - “Metal Fabrications”
2. Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry”
3. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers”
4. Section 09900 - “Painting”

### 1.2 SUMMARY:

A. The extent of each type of masonry work is indicated on the Drawings and Schedules.

1. All CMU shall extend up to bottom of structure, unless specifically indicated otherwise.

B. This Section includes the following:

1. Face Brick (fields and accents), in standard size units, and custom shapes, or custom units as indicated, selected by Architect after bidding, within allowance amount(s).

2. Concrete masonry units (CMU), where indicated on the Drawings.

3. Standard gray colored mortar at exposed interior and concealed exterior locations.

4. Mortar color and tooling at exposed exterior locations as indicated, selected by Architect after bidding, within allowance amount(s); Up to two (2) colors of mortar may be selected.

5. Anchors, ties, reinforcing, masonry accessories, and concealed flashings, and galvanized steel lintels.

a. Elastic through-wall flashing at all wall base flashing, at heads and sills of exterior wall openings, at flashing at perimeters of all exterior wall openings, and as otherwise indicated.

6. Water Repellents: Exterior wythe (exposed brick) only.

a. Field applied to all completed exterior masonry work.

### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

A. Provide concrete unit masonry that develops at least the following installed compressive strengths (f’m): f’m = 1,500 psi.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

1. Manufacturer's product data for each different masonry unit, accessory, water repellent (integral and surface-applied types), and other manufactured product indicated, including certifications that each item and type complies with specified requirements.

a. Include instructions for handling, storage, installation, and protection.

2. Shop drawings for reinforcing, if any, detailing fabrication, bending, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315 "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcing" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, and arrangement of masonry reinforcement.

3. Samples for initial selection purposes of the following, and for verification after initial selections (4 sets minimum):

a. Field brick or blend, as indicated, within Allowance amount.

a. Precast Concrete Masonry Units: Full size units of each type, size, finish and color unit indicated.

c. Accent brick, as indicated, within Allowance amount.

d. Colored masonry mortar samples showing colors available, in price range of preselected mortar color or if not preselected, within allowance amount.

e. Exposed Masonry, showing full extent of colors and variations anticipated, for each standard and special shape unit selected, and as indicated on the Drawings.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Fire Performance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies whose fire resistance has been determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting organization, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by another means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Single-Source Responsibility for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from one manufacturer for each different product required for each continuous surface or visually related surfaces.

C. Single-Source Responsibility for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source and producer for each aggregate.

D. Single-Source Responsibility for Water Repellents: Obtain each type of integral and applied water repellents from a single manufacturer for the entire project.

1. Verify full compatibility with any other coatings, fluid applied waterproofing, etc., prior to application of this and other products. Notify Architect in writing and in detail, of any incompatible products, prior to any application, and await Architect's written direction on how to proceed.

E Subcontractors: Subcontractors shall have been established in their own firms for at least 5 verifiable years and shall have successfully completed at least 5 verifiable projects of this size, scope, and complexity. Furnish names and telephone numbers of General Contractors for each project submitted for consideration of experience requirements.

1. Refer to Section 01015 - "Special Conditions" for additional information and minimum experience requirements.

F. Field-Constructed Mock-Ups for Each Different Brick, Precast Concrete Unit and Mortar Required: Prior to installation of unit masonry, erect sample wall panels to further verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects as well as qualities of materials and execution. Build mock-ups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for final unit of Work:

1. Locate mock-ups on site in locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

2. Build mock-ups for the following types of masonry in sizes of approximately 4 feet long by 4 feet high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes as well as accessories.

a. Each type of exposed unit masonry construction, utilizing mortar color and joint detail selected and/or specified, insulation, flashing, and weeps.

b. Incorporate integral and applied water repellents, the same as required for the completed work.

3. Notify Architect one week in advance of the dates and times when mock-ups will be erected.

4. Protect mock-ups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.

5. Retain and maintain mock-ups during construction in undisturbed condition as standard for judging completed unit masonry construction.

a. When directed, demolish and remove mock-ups from Project site.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver masonry materials to project in undamaged condition.

B. Store and handle masonry units off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, and other causes. If units become wet, do not place until units are in an air-dried condition.

C. Store cementitious materials and insulation off the ground, under cover, and in dry location.

D. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

E. Store masonry accessories including metal items to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

F. Store water repellents in strict accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations, off of ground, under cover, and otherwise as required to protect from damage, contamination, etc.

G. Refer to Section 01010 - "Summary of Work" and Section 01015 - "Special Conditions", for additional information and requirements regarding stored materials.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Protection of Masonry:

1. During erection, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

2. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.

3. Where one wythe of multi-wythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.

C. Stain Prevention:

1. Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed, painted, and/or to receive any other coatings. Remove immediately any grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

2. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by means of coverings spread on ground and over wall surface, until landscaping or other improvements indicated adjacent to completed masonry work are in place.

3. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.

4. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes from mortar droppings, coatings, water repellents, and/or any other damage.

D. Clean Air Space:

1. Prevent grout and mortar from occurring in, bridging, forming ledges, and/or filling air space between masonry and back-up walls.

2. Remove excess grout and mortar flush with back side of masonry as work progresses, using trowel, board pulled up through air space, or other effective and acceptable method(s), pre-approved by Architect.

3. Provide cavity drainage material specified just above through-wall flashings and weeps.

E. Cold-Weather Construction: Comply with referenced unit masonry standard for cold-weather construction and the following:

1. Do not lay masonry units that are wet or frozen.

2. Remove masonry damaged by freezing conditions.

F. Hot-Weather Construction: Comply with referenced unit masonry standard, or applicable Building Code requirements.

G. Thoroughly clean and rinse all masonry prior to application of water repellents, water-proofing, coatings, paint, etc. Comply with written recommendations of each manufacturer of products to be applied to masonry work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL:

A. Comply with referenced unit masonry standard and other requirements specified in this Section applicable to each material indicated.

### 2.2 BRICK:

A. Size: Unless otherwise indicated, provide bricks manufactured to the following actual dimensions:

1. Standard Modular Units: Standard color selection to be determined; Provide special molded shapes where indicated, and for applications requiring brick of form, size and finish on exposed surfaces which cannot be produced from standard brick sizes by sawing (all saw cuts must be concealed in the finished masonry work).

B. For sills, caps and similar applications resulting in exposure to brick surfaces which otherwise would be concealed from view, provide uncored or unfrogged units with all exposed surfaces by sawing.

C. Facing Brick: ASTM C 216, Type FBS, SW: Brick texture and colors will be selected by Architect after bidding.

D. Application: Use brick above at all locations where brick is indicated on the Drawings.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS:

A. General:

1. Comply with requirements indicated below applicable to each form of concrete masonry unit required.

2. Provide special shapes where indicated and as follows:

a. For lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.

3. Size: Provide concrete masonry units complying with requirements indicated below for size that are manufactured to specified face dimensions within tolerances specified in the applicable referenced ASTM specification for concrete masonry units.

4. Concrete Masonry Units:

a. Manufacturer's standard sixteen (16) inches long x eight (8) inches x eight (8) inches nominal dimension, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

b. Manufacturer's standard sixteen (16) inches long x eight (8) inches x four (4) inches nominal dimension, split-faced exterior, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

5. Concrete Building Brick: Standard Modular, 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.

6. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Hollow Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units - (CMU):

1. ASTM C 90, Grade N.

2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net area compressive strength of 1,900 psi.

3. Weight Classification: Lightweight, at above-grade locations.

4. Weight Classification: Normal weight, at below-grade locations, and where necessary to achieve required fire-ratings according to manufacturer's testing and/or by "calculated fire resistance" as may be allowed by applicable building code.

C. Concrete Building Brick:

1. ASTM C 55, Grade N.

2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net area compressive strength of 3,500 psi.

3. Weight Classification: Lightweight.

## 2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS:

A. Portland Cement for Grout: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce required mortar color.

B. Masonry Cement:

1. ASTM C 91.

2. For colored pigmented mortars use premixed colored masonry cements of formulation required to produce color indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect after bidding, within Allowance amount(s).

C. Sand: ASTM C 144.

D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

E. Aggregate for Mortar:

1. ASTM C 144, except for joints less than 1/4 inch use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

2. White Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone, only where necessary to achieve selected colors.

F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

G. Colored Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.

H. Water: Clean and potable.

## 2.5 REINFORCING STEEL:

A. General: Provide reinforcing steel complying with requirements of referenced unit masonry standard and this article.

B. Steel Reinforcing Bars: Billet steel complying with ASTM A 615, and Section 03310 - “Concrete”.

## 2.6 JOINT REINFORCEMENT:

A. General: Provide joint reinforcement complying with requirements of referenced unit masonry standards and this article, formed from the following:

1. Galvanized carbon steel wire, coating class as required by referenced unit masonry standard for application indicated, complying with ASTM A 82, hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153, class B-2 coating (1.5 ounces per square foot).

B. Description: For multi-wythe masonry, provide welded-wire units prefabricated with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10 feet in widths approximately 2 inches less than nominal width of walls and partitions, as required for full mortar embedment and mortar coverage of not less than 5/8 inch at exterior sides and not less than 1/2-inch elsewhere; with prefabricated corner and tee units, and complying with requirements indicated below, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Wire Diameter for Side Rods: 0.1483 inch (9 gauge).

2. Wire Diameter for Cross Rods: 0.1483 inch (9 gauge).

3. Type as follows:

a. Truss design with diagonal cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches o.c. and number of side rods as follows:

b. Number of Side Rods for Multi-wythe Masonry: One side rod for each face of masonry units more than 4 inches in nominal width plus one side rod for each wythe of masonry 4 inches or less in nominal width.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide joint reinforcement by one of the following:

1. Dayton Superior Corporation (formerly Southern Construction Products, Inc.)
2. Dur-O-Wal, Inc.; Div. of Dayton Superior Corporation
3. Heckman Building Products, Inc.
4. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
5. Masonry Reinforcing Corp. of America.
6. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co.

## 2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS, GENERAL:

A. General: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent articles that comply with requirements for metal and size of referenced unit masonry standards and of this article.

B. Galvanized Carbon Steel Wire:

1. ASTM A 82, coating class as required by the Standard Building Code and referenced unit masonry standard for application indicated.

2. Wire Diameter: 0.1875 inch.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheet as follows: ASTM A 366 (commercial quality) cold-rolled carbon steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153, Class B2 (for unit lengths over 15 inches) and Class B3 (for unit lengths under 15 inches), for sheet metal ties and anchors exposed to the weather and not completely embedded in mortar and grout.

D. Thickness of Steel Sheet Galvanized After Fabrication: Uncoated thickness of steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication:

1. 0.0598 inch (16 gage).

E. Steel Plates and Bars: ASTM A 36, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153, Class B3, as applicable to size and form indicated.

F. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Dayton Superior Corporation (formerly Southern Construction Products, Inc.)
2. Dur-O-Wal, Inc.; Div. of Dayton Superior Corporation
3. Heckman Building Products, Inc.
4. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
5. Masonry Reinforcing Corp. of America.
6. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co.

## 2.8 RIGID ANCHORS AT LOCATIONS INDICATED OR REQUIRED:

A. Provide straps of form and length indicated, or required (if any), fabricated from metal strips 1-1/2-inches wide by 1/4-inch thick.

## 2.9 ADJUSTABLE MASONRY VENEER ANCHORS FOR CONNECTING MASONRY TO WOOD OR METAL STUDS AT SINGLE-WYTHE WALLS, AND WHERE THRU-WALL JOINT REINFORCING CANNOT BE USED:

A. General: Provide 2-piece galvanized assemblies where required (if any), allowing vertical or horizontal differential movement between wall and framework parallel to plane of wall, but resisting tension and compression forces perpendicular to it; for attachment over sheathing to metal studs or masonry back-up and with the following structural performance characteristics:

1. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in either tension or compression without deforming over, or developing play in excess of, 0.05-inch.

B. Screw-Attached (to studs) and Expansion Anchor Attached (to masonry back-up) Masonry Veneer Anchors:

1. Units consisting of wire tie section and metal anchor section complying with the following requirements:

a. Wire Tie Shape: Z-shaped pintle (single or double).

b. Wire Tie Length: As required to extend 2-1/2-inches into masonry wythe of veneer face.

2. Anchor Section: 16-gauge sheet metal plate (at single-leg or double-leg pintle), or similar wire eye-configuration (at double-leg pintle), with plate type pre-punched for screw hole(s) at top and outward legs bent to form leg to bridge insulation and abut studs, or masonry; of overall size as required for intended application.

C. Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs or Masonry: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, #10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange by not less than 3-exposed threads, and masonry but not less than 1-inch, and with corrosion protective coating; as recommended by manufacturer for the intended use.

D. Galvanize all components.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS AT LOCATIONS INDICATED OR AS REQUIRED BY PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Unit Type Masonry Inserts in New Concrete: Cast iron or malleable iron inserts of type and size indicated.

B. Dovetail Slots for New Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots, with filler strips, of slot size indicated, or if not indicated, as required by project conditions, fabricated from 0.0336-inch (22-gage) galvanized sheet metal.

C. Anchor Bolts: Steel bolts complying with A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153, Class C; of diameter and length indicated and in the following configurations, as indicated on the Drawings, or if not indicated, as required for the intended use:

1. Headed bolts.

2. Nonheaded bolts, straight.

3. Nonheaded bolts, bent in manner indicated.

## 2.11 POST-INSTALLED ANCHORS, WHERE INDICATED OR AS REQUIRED:

A. Anchors as described below, with capability to sustain, without failure, load imposed within factors of safety indicated, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing laboratory.

1. Type: Expansion anchors.

2. Material: Zinc-plated carbon steel, hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication, or Zamac, or other non-corrosive or coated material in compliance with requirements and submitted for prior approval.

3. For post-installed anchors in grouted concrete masonry units: Capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6-times loads imposed by masonry.

## 2.12 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS:

A. Vinyl Sheet Flashing (typical except below parapet caps and all other tops of walls exposed at the exterior of buildings and other locations on site):

1. Smooth surfaced flexible sheet flashings especially formulated from virgin polyvinyl chloride with plasticizers and other modifiers, to remain flexible and waterproof in concealed masonry applications, black in color and of thickness indicated below:

a. Thickness: 30-mils.

2. Product/Manufacturer: "Nervastral 300" (smooth surface both sides, not textured, grained, etc.), or pre-approved equivalent submitted at least 10-days prior to original Bid Date and subsequently approved, including mastic, and where required companion surface conditioner product, and all other materials and components required.

3. Application: Use where flashing is fully concealed in masonry, including in part, wall flashing, below sills, at lintels, above grade weeps at base of exterior walls, etc.

4. Adhesive for Flashings: Type recommended by manufacturer of flashing material, for each use indicated.

B. Interlocking Metal Flashing (typical below parapet caps and all other tops of walls exposed at the exterior of buildings and other locations on site):

1. Low-profile concealed through-wall sheet metal flashing, fabricated with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of material, to provide an integral bond with solid mortar bedding at each side.

2. Height: 3/8-inch.

3. Width: 1-inch less than wall thickness (set in-place 1/2-inch back from each exterior wall face).

4. Material: ASTM A 167, Type 302/304, 2d finish, fully annealed or dead soft temper stainless steel, 0.018-inch thickness.

5. Product/Manufacturer: Provide one of the following, or pre-approved equivalent product, properly submitted (refer to Section 01015 - "Special Conditions") at least 10-days prior to original bid dated and subsequently accepted by addendum or letter by Architect.

a. "Dovetail Design Flashing"; Cheney Flashing Co.; 1-800-322-2873.

b. "Three-Way Interlocking Flashing"; Keystone Flashing Co.; 1-800-526-8348.

c. "Interlocking Mechanically-Keyed Flashing"; Mastercraft Metals, Inc.; 1-888-593-3572.

## 2.13 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES:

A. Nonmetallic Expansion Joint Strips: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Type 2 (closed cell), Class A (cellular rubber and rubber-like materials with specific resistance to petroleum base oils), Grade 1 (compression-deflection range of 2-5 psi), compressible up to 35 percent, of width and thickness indicated, formulated from the following material:

1. Flexible Cellular Neoprene.

B. Preformed Control Joint Gaskets:

1. Material as indicated below, designed to fit project conditions, and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated, or if not indicated, T-shape (or other special shapes required by project conditions to fit inside masonry, and of depth through joint to allow proper sealant application with only one backer rod.

2. Styrene-Butadiene Rubber Compound: ASTM D 2000, Designation 2AA-805.

C. Bond Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Weep Holes, Provide the Following: Cotton sash cord; 3/8-inch outside diameter by length(s) as required to overlap cord 2-inches past adjacent weep hole at bottom of air space at interior wall cavity, extend through exterior wythe(s), and 4-inches on exterior side - until water repellent is applied and excess is trimmed flush with raked mortar joint at flashing.

1. Wet cord prior to embedding in mortar.

E. Cavity Drainage Material: 1-inch- (25-mm-)thick (or other thickness as required by clear wall cavities indicated on the Drawings or as otherwise required by project conditions), free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands and shaped to avoid being clogged by mortar droppings. Configuration shall be such that product cannot be dislodged after placement of masonry, and with either random or patterned protrusions or keystone shaped cut-outs so as to allow moisture evacuation to below any accumulated mortar droppings into cavities. Provide in rolls or sheets approximately 11-inches wide.

1. Product/Manufacturer: Provide one of the following, or pre-approved equivalent product, properly submitted (refer to Section 01015 - "Special Conditions") at least 10-days prior to original bid dated and subsequently accepted by addendum or letter by Architect.

a. Mortar Maze; Advanced Building Products, Inc.
b. CavClear Masonry Mat; CavClear.
c. Mortar Net; Mortar Net USA, Ltd.
d. Mortar Stop; Polytite Manufacturing Corp.

## 2.14 MASONRY CLEANERS:

A. Job-Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution of trisodium phosphate (1/2-cup dry measure) and laundry detergent (1/2-cup dry measure) dissolved in one gallon of water.

## 2.15 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES:

A. General:

1. Do not add admixtures including coloring pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.

B. Mixing: Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious, water and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer; comply with referenced ASTM standards for mixing time and water content.

C. Mortar for Unit Masonry:

1. Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar required, unless indicated otherwise.

2. Use Type M mortar for masonry below grade and in contact with earth, and where indicated.

3. Use Type S mortar for reinforced masonry and where indicated.

4. Use Type S mortar for exterior, above-grade load-bearing and non-loadbearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-loadbearing partitions, and for other applications where another type is not indicated.

D. Mortar Colors:

1. Standard gray colored mortar at exposed interior and concealed locations.

2. Colored mortar at exposed exterior locations (and any brick at interior locations) shall be as selected by Architect after bidding, within Allowance amount(s).

E. Grout for Unit Masonry:

1. Comply with ASTM C 476 for grout for use in construction of reinforced and nonreinforced unit masonry. Use grout of consistency indicated or if not otherwise indicated, of consistency (fine or coarse) at time of placement which will completely fill all spaces intended to receive grout.

2. Use fine grout in grout spaces less than two inches (2") in horizontal direction, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Use coarse grout in grout spaces two inches (2") or more in least horizontal dimension, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.16 WATER REPELLENT:

A. Exterior Water Repellent and Sealer: Provide from a manufacturer and by an applicator complying with experience requirements in "Special Conditions," and as follows:

1. Equivalent to "BSM-40 VOC" as manufactured by Chem-Trete Div.; Degussa Corporation; Mobile, Alabama, with UV sensitive/fugitive dye; One Coat, unless otherwise required to obtain complete coverage.

2. Submit for approval prior to application.

3. Application rate not to exceed product manufacturer's current written recommendations, but 100% coverage is required.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other specific conditions, and other conditions affecting performance of unit masonry.

1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of unit masonry, if any.

B. Examine rough-in and built-in construction to verify actual locations of other or related work, prior to installation.

C. Do not proceed until any unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

A. Comply with referenced unit masonry standards and other requirements indicated, applicable to each type of installation included in Project.

1. Install bought-out manufactured items (i.e.: flashing, special flashing, insulation, etc.), in accordance with manufacturer's current written directions and recommendations, related fire tests/certifications, and reviewed shop drawings.

B. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to the full thickness indicated. Build single-wythe walls to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of nominal thickness indicated.

C. Height: Build walls and other masonry construction to full height indicated, or if not indicated, at least up to bottom of structure or structure bearing height where occurs. Extend fire-rated walls, and all perimeter/surrounding walls as shown on drawings up to bottom of structure or roof deck, as required to seal-off top of walls.

D. Build chases and recesses as shown or required to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections of the Specifications. Provide not less than 8 inches of masonry between chase or recess and jamb of openings and between adjacent chases and recesses.

E. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completion of masonry. After installation of equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to the opening.

F. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide continuous pattern and to fit adjoining construction. Use full-size units without cutting where possible.

1. Use dry cutting saws to cut concrete masonry units.

G. Wetting Clay Brick: Wet brick made from clay or shale which have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of much than 30 grams per 30 sq. in. per minute. Use wetting methods which ensure each clay masonry unit being nearly saturated but surface dry when laid.

H. Do not wet concrete masonry units.

I. Cleaning Reinforcing: Before placing, remove loose rust, ice and other coatings from reinforcing.

J. Fill all hollow masonry and air spaces below grade with concrete.

K. Provide solid substrate for all wall flashing.

L. Wet sash cord weeps prior to embedding in mortar, so it will not draw water out of mortar.

## 3.3 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES - REQUIRED FOR ACCEPTANCE:

A. Comply with construction tolerances of referenced unit masonry standards.

B. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of columns, walls and arises do not exceed 1/4-inches in 10-feet, or 3/8-inches in a story height not to exceed 20-feet, nor 1/2-inches in 40-feet or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4-inch in any story or 20-feet maximum, or 1/2-inch in 40-feet or more. For vertical alignment of head joints do not exceed plus or minus 1/4-inches in 10-feet, 1/2-inch maximum.

C. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4-inch in any bay or 20-feet maximum, nor 1/2-inch in 40' or more. For top surface of bearing walls do not exceed 1/8-inches between adjacent floor elements in 10' or 1/16" within width of a single unit.

D. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan and related portion of columns, walls and partitions, do not exceed 1/2-inch in any bay or 20' maximum, nor 3/4" in 40' or more.

E. Variation in Cross Sectional Dimensions: Do not exceed bed joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8". Do not exceed head joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8".

## 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS:

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and for accurate locating of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half-size units at corners, jambs, and where possible at other locations.

B. Lay up walls to comply with specified construction tolerances, with courses accurately spaced and coordinated with other construction.

C. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Lay exposed masonry in the following bond pattern; do not use units with less that nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

1. Exterior Brick and Concrete Masonry Units: Running bond, unless specifically indicated otherwise on Drawings.

2. All interior CMU shall be running bond, unless specifically indicated otherwise on Drawings.

D. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

E. Stopping and Resuming Work: In each course, rack back 1/2-unit length in each course; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet masonry units lightly (if required), and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh masonry.

F. Built-In Work:

1. As construction progresses, build-in items specified under this and other Sections of the Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

2. Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

4. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 3 courses (24 inches) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING:

A. Lay hollow concrete masonry units as follows:

1. With full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells and cross webs.

2. Bed all webs in mortar in starting course on footings and in all courses of walls, piers, columns, and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be filled with grout.

3. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed including areas under cells.

B. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to be concealed or to be covered by base, crown moulding, and/or other materials, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Tool all joints in exposed work as follows:

1. Interior: Slightly concave, with a tool of at least 50% but no more than 100% larger than joint width.

2. Exterior: Slightly concave, with a tool of at least 50% but no more than 100% larger than joint width.

3. Cut flush with face of exposed masonry, and taking care not to spread mortar over onto face of masonry units.

D. Maintain joint widths of 3/8 inch, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment, or as otherwise required to align with or match adjacent work.

E. Collar Joints: After each coarse is laid, fill vertical longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with mortar, for the following work:

1. Exterior walls, except where clear air space above flashing is indicated.

2. Interior bearing walls.

## 3.6 STRUCTURAL BONDING OF MULTI-WYTHE MASONRY:

A. Use continuous horizontal joint reinforcement installed in horizontal mortar joints for bond tie between wythes, at 16 inches o.c. vertically (maximum) at running bond and 8 inches o.c. (maximum) at any stacked bond.

B. Corners:

1. Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each course at corners, unless otherwise shown.

2. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcement at corners using prefabricated “L” units, in addition to masonry bonding.

C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls:

1. Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown or necessary at juncture, provide same type of bonding specified for structural bonding between wythes and space as follows:

2. Provide individual metal ties to columns and stud walls, at 16 inches o.c. vertically (maximum).

a. Provide additional anchors within 1’-0” of openings and at intervals around perimeter not exceeding 3’-0” o.c.

3. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcement using prefabricated “T” units.

4. Provide continuous dovetail slots, with anchors at 16 inches o.c. maximum vertically and 16 inches o.c., at new concrete back-up walls, columns, etc.

## 3.7 MASONRY WALL CELL INSULATION:

A. Fill foamed-in-place insulation in cavities as indicated, to completely fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each area. Close ports after complete coverage has been confirmed. Limit fall of insulation to one story in height, but not to exceed 8’-0”.

1. Provide foamed-in-place insulation at the following locations:

a. In cells of all hollow CMU indicated in Paragraph 2.3 above, except cells which are required to be filled with concrete or grout.

## 3.8 CAVITIES/AIR SPACES:

A. Keep cavities/air spaces clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavities/air spaces flush.

1. Where not possible and at wood and metal studs, tie exterior wythe to backup with individual metal ties spaced not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16” o.c. horizontally. Stagger alternate courses.

B. Provide weepholes in exterior wythe of new cavity walls, located immediately above ledges and flashing, spaced 32 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

C. Tie exterior wythe to backup and multi-wythe walls with continuous horizontal joint reinforcing at 16 inches o.c. vertically.

D. Install continuous rigid insulation as the work progresses, in compliance with manufacturer’s current written recommendations, including in part, adhesives for securing to substrate, and joint fillers, sealers, or other treatments

1. Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.

2. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer and cover with tape after cured; both acceptable to sealer and insulation manufacturer.

## 3.9 HORIZONTAL JOINT REINFORCEMENT:

A. General: Provide continuous horizontal joint reinforcement as indicated and as required by Code, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically at running bond and 8 inches o.c. vertically at any stacked bond. Install longitudinal side rods in mortar for their entire length with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2-inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcing a minimum of 6 inches.

B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by use of prefabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend reinforcement units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

D. Reinforce masonry openings greater than 1'-0" wide, with horizontal joint reinforcement placed in 2 horizontal joints approximately 8" apart, immediately above the lintel and immediately below the sill. Extend reinforcement a minimum of 2-0" beyond jambs of the opening except at control joints.

## 3.10 ANCHORING MASONRY WORK:

A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:

1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar or other rigid materials.

2. Anchor masonry to structural members with flexible anchors which allow 4-way movement embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.

3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally.

B. Anchor single-wythe masonry veneer to studs with masonry veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:

1. Fasten each anchor section through sheathing to studs with 2 metal fasteners of type indicated.

2. Embed tie section in masonry joints. Provide not less than 1-inch air space between back of masonry veneer wythe and face of sheathing.

3. Locate anchor section relative to course in which tie section is embedded to allow maximum vertical differential movement of tie up and down.

4. Space anchors as indicated but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally with not less than one anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 1'-0" of openings and at intervals around perimeter not exceeding 3'-0" o.c.

## 3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS:

A. General: Install control and expansion joints in unit masonry where existing in floor slabs, walls, and roof, and as otherwise indicated. Build in related items as the masonry progresses. Do not form a continuous span through movement joints unless provisions are made to prevent in-plane restraint of wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in masonry as follows: Install preformed control joint gaskets designed to fit wall construction. Fill recesses with backer rod and flexible sealant, as specified in Section 07900 - "Joint Sealers." Use firestop materials at fire-rated walls, as specified in Section 07270 - "Firestopping."

C. Provide control joints at locations indicated or as approved by Architect, and not to exceed the following at continuous straight runs:

1. Exterior walls: 30'-0" o.c. maximum.

2. Interior walls: 40'-0" o.c. maximum.

## 3.12 LINTELS:

A. Install hot-dipped galvanized steel lintels where exterior steel lintels are indicated.

B. Provide masonry or precast lintels where shown and wherever openings of more than 1'-0" for brick size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels. Temporarily support formed-in-place lintels, including steel lintels, for at least 7-days after masonry above has been completed; Supports shall be from cured concrete or masonry construction (at least 8-days old) or other surface accepted in writing by Architect, prior to installing supports.

1. For hollow concrete masonry unit walls, use specially formed bond beam units with reinforcement bars placed as indicated and filled with course grout.

C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Unless indicated otherwise, fill all jamb cells with concrete, from supporting structure below, up to bottom of lintel bearing, 8-inches wide by CMU wall thickness - minimum.

## 3.13 FLASHING/WEEP HOLES:

A. General: Install embedded concealed flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to the downward flow of water in exterior walls, and where indicated.

B. Prepare masonry surfaces so that they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Place flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive/sealant/tape, as recommended by flashing manufacturer before covering with mortar.

1. Where indicated or required by manufacturer, provide continuous seal at top edge, using their recommended materials.

C. Install flashings as follows:

1. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 4 inches into masonry at exterior end. Extend flashing from exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 4 inches on back-up wall (at stud walls), and seal top edge with product specified; except turned up a minimum of 8 inches at back-up masonry walls and extended through back-up wall to within 1/2-inch of its interior face.

2. At heads and sills, extend flashing as specified above unless otherwise indicated but turn up ends not less than 2 inches to form a pan.

3. Cut off flashing 1/2-inch from exterior face of wall and tool joint in accordance with flashing manufacturer's requirements.

4. Comply with manufacturer's current written instructions and recommendations.

D. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.

E. Install weep holes, in the head joints in exterior wythes of the first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashings and as follows:

1. Form weep holes with product specified in Part 2 of this Section.

2. Space weep holes 32 inches o.c., except 24 inches o.c. at heads and sills of masonry openings, and centered on openings, unless specifically indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

3. Wet cotton sash cord prior to embedding in mortar.

F. Place cavity drainage material immediately above flashing in cavities.

## 3.14 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY:

A. General: Install reinforced unit masonry to comply with requirements of referenced unit masonry standards, and as indicated on the Drawings.

## 3.15 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING:

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or if units do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units and in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

1. Clean glass, unit masonry and other surfaces as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears immediately, using a clean, wet sponge or a scrub brush with stiff fiber bristles. Do not use harsh cleaners, acids, abrasives, steel wool, or wire brushes when removing mortar or cleaning glass, unit masonry or other surfaces.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge any voids or holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point-up all joints including corners, openings, and adjacent construction to provide a neat, uniform appearance, prepared for application of sealants.

C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.

2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave 1/2- panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.

3. Protect adjacent nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.

4. Saturate wall surfaces with water prior to application of cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.

5. Clean brick by means of bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA "Technical Note No. 20 Revised", to clean brick masonry made of clay or shale, except use detergent as the masonry cleaner.

6. Clean concrete masonry by means of cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 45 applicable to type of stain present on exposed surfaces.

a. Comply with masonry manufacturer's instructions.

## 3.16 WATER REPELLENTS:

A. Apply water repellents to all exterior masonry and architectural precast concrete after thorough cleaning and rinsing, prior to any backfill or any other concealment.

B. Install in strict accordance with manufacturer's current written instructions and recommendations.

## 3.17 PROTECTIONS:

A. Trim excess sash cord flush with cured mortar joint at exterior side of walls.

B. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure unit masonry is without damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 051200

## STRUCTURAL STEEL

## PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division I Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Grouting under base and bearing plates: Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

B. Section 053000 - Steel Decking.

1.3 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Anchor bolts and setting templates:

1. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

2. Section 031000 - Concrete Formwork.

1.4 SCOPE

This is a Performance specification. Work under this section includes, but is not limited to, a complete resolution of the geometry of the Structural Steel members and their joints, producing shop drawings which accurately reflect the geometry of the members and joints fabricating and erecting of the structural steel to achieve a finished structural frame. The fabricator and erector shall include in their bid the expense of making any field corrections required to achieve a workable structure.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Steel fabricator and erector to supply a list of five previous projects similar in size and complexity to this project to establish that they are capable to perform the work for this project. List shall include the name and location of each project with the name and phone number of the Contractor and Architect for which the previous projects were performed~ Architect may reject any steel fabricator or erector that, in his opinion, fails to appear capable of performing the required work. Steel fabricator shall be approved by the Architect prior to the production of shop drawings.

B. Shop drawings prepared by the fabricator. Submit one reproducible sepia and one print of shop drawings. Only marked up sepia will be returned. Connections not detailed on the design drawings shall be designed by the fabricator. Structural design drawings are for design intent only. It is the responsibility of the fabricator to ensure that the shop drawings reflect all necessary information required for fabrication and erection. Reproduction of structural design drawings for the shop drawing submittal will not be permitted nor will they be reviewed.·

C. Prequalified welding procedures, prepared by the steel fabricator and erector, as a written procedure specification to Engineer. Prepare these procedures in accordance with Appendix E of the AWS "Structural Welding Code," AWS D1.1-85. Obtain Architect's approval before erecting steel.

D. Submit mill certification that steel supplied meets requirements of specifications.

E. Submit electrode manufacturer's certification that the electrode and flux combination the requirements of the particular classification or grade of electrodes.

F. Submit manufacturer's certification that shear stud bases are qualified.

G. Submit a minimum of three copies of each report from the Testing Laboratory to the Architect. See Field Quality Control section this specification for inspections and test required of the Testing Laboratory.

H. Submittals shall include the following note completed and signed by the Contractor:
The data submitted does not contain material deviation from requirements of contract documents except as follows:

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural steel: Meet requirements of Manual of Steel Construction, Ninth Edition~ Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design for types of steel specified.

B. Fabrication and erection: Meet requirements of Specification for the Design Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings, June 1, 1989, and all subsequent modifications or addendums (referred to below as Structural Steel for Buildings) as indicated.

C. Welding: In accordance with requirements of American Welding Society "Structural Welding Code," AWS D1.1-85.

D. Testing Agency _ Personnel performing tests and inspection will be certified by American Society for Non-Destructive Testing, for Level II.

E. Included in the responsibilities for structural steel testing and inspection are the following:

1. Observe the A WS qualifications of all welders.
2. Inspect and test a representative sampling of a minimum of 10% of the high strength bolts for proper installation and tensioning.
3. Verify that electrodes are compatible with the base metals joined.
4. Ultrasonically test complete penetration welds and visually inspect all fillet welds.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Steel Fabricator: Fabricator shall be approved by the Architect. See Submittal section this specification for requirements.

B. Welders, tackers, and welding operators: Qualified in accordance with Code for Welding in Building Construction, A WS Dl.I-96 to perform the type of work required.

1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Deliver materials, such as anchor bolts and other anchor devices to be embedded in concrete and masonry construction, to project site in time to be installed in proper sequence with concrete and masonry work. provide setting drawings, templates and directions for installation of anchor bolts and other devices.

B. Deliver steel to project site and stack in designated area.

C. Stack and store steel above ground on platforms, studs or other supports. Protect steel from corrosion and damage. Keep materials clean.

D. Store other materials in a weather tight, dry place until ready for use.

E. Store packaged materials in their original, unbroken package or container.

F. Store shear studs in a protected, weather tight, dry place until ready for use.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. ASTM A36-96, Standard Specification for Structural Steel for plates, channels and angles.

B. ASTM A572-94ce2, Grade 50, High Strength, Low Alloy Columbian-Vanadium Steels of Structural Quality for all other rolled shapes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE

ASTM A53-96, Grade B, Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

2.3 STEEL TUBING

ASTM A500-93, Grade B, Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Structural Tubing.

2.4 SHEAR STUDS

Shall be in accordance with A WS Structural Welding Code A WS D 1.1-96, Section 7.

2.5 WELDING ELECTRODES

A. Electrodes having low hydrogen covering shall be purchased in hermetically-sealed containers.

B. For fabricating plant use: E70 electrodes, AWS A5.1-91, A5.5-96, A5.17-89 or A5.2095.

C. For shear studs, in accordance with A WS Structural Welding Code A WS Dl.l-96, Part F. Provide heat-resistant arc shields with studs.

2.6 BOLTS

A. High strength bolts, nuts and washer: Type 1 or 2, ASTM A325-96, Standard Specification for High-Strength Bolts for Structural Joints, Including Suitable Nuts and Plain Hardened Washers. Provide %" diameter bolts unless noted otherwise.

B. High strength bolts shall be load-indicator bolts. Provide load-indicator bolts as manufactured by Bethlehem, Le Juene, or approved substitute. Load-indicator bolts shall be installed using equipment specifically manufactured for this . use. Load indicator bolts in tension shall have rounded heads that cannot accept the application of a wrench.

C. Unfinished bolts: ASTM A307-94, Standard Specification for Carbon Steel and Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners

D. Expansion (wedge) anchors:

| Manufacturer | Product |
|---|---|
| Ramset Fastening Systems | Trubolt anchors |
| Hilti Fastening Systems | Hilti anchors |
| Simpson Strong-Tie | Wedge-All anchors |

2.7 SHOP COATING

A. A high grade rust-inhibiting primer. Use red oxide primer unless otherwise noted.

B. Paint shall be VOC compliant, lead and chromate free and shall be compatible with products specified in Division 9 specifications.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 FABRICATING

A. Fabricate in accordance with applicable requirements of M2 of "Specification For Structural Steel Building" by AISC.

B. Design all connections, except for those fully detailed on the Structural Drawings.

3.2 SHOP COATING

A. Before steel leaves fabricator's shop, remove loose mill scale, ruS4 weld slag and flux deposit, dirt, foreign matter and oil and grease. Prepare surface as recommended by paint manufacturer for the intended exposure. Do not sandblast, flame clean, or pickle material.

B. Thoroughly and evenly apply one coat of shop paint to cleaned surfaces. Thickness of shop paint coat shall be applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil Of as required by surface preparation.

C. Do not paint steel to be encased in concrete, plaster and sprayed-on- fireproofing.

3.3 ERECTING

A. Before commencing erecting work, notify Architect in writing at 48 hours in advance.

B. Erect steel in accordance with requirements of Section M4 of "Specification For Structural Steel Buildings" by AISC, except paragraph M4.6 is hereby modified to make field painting a part of the work on this section.

C. Use specified high-strength bolts for bolted connections, except where unfinished bolts and welded connections are allowed below. Use a minimum of2 bolts at each bolted connection. Use hardened washers under bolt or nut, whichever is the element turned in tightening. Prior to tightening the bolts of a connection to final tension, there shall first be enough bolts brought to a "snug tight" condition to insure that the parts of the joint are brought into good contact with each other.

D. Bolts in bearing type conditions which are not subject to fatigue or load fluctuations need only to be tightened to a snug-tight condition. Bolts in tension shall be tightened to full tension values. Refer to Drawings for location of bolts required to be fully tightened.

E. Use unfinished bolts in places indicated.

F. Install expansion anchors per manufacturer's instructions.

G. Use shear studs where indicated.

H. Weld connections where indicated. Do not peen welds unless authorized in writing by Architect. Any shop paint on surfaces adjacent to joints to be field welded shall be wire brushed to reduce the paint film to a minimum.

I. Field Painting: For shop coated steel, touch up welds and scarred and damaged shop coat.

J. Protect all structural steel below grade by encasing in concrete or painting with bitumastic paint.

K. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect/Engineer.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Shop and field welding will be tested and inspected in accordance with A WS Structural Welding Code. Welds will be visually or ultrasonically tested, depending on types of welded joints. All penetration welds shall be ultrasonically tested and inspected. A minimum representative sampling of 10 percent of all other welds shall be inspected by the Testing Laboratory for compliance with the design drawings and shop drawings. Additional inspections and testing shall be directed by the Architect. Additional testing as a result of non-conformances will be at the expense of the Contractor.

B. The Testing Laboratory shall inspect and test a minimum representative sampling of 10 percent of all bolted connections. Additional inspections and testing of bolted connections shall be performed by the Testing Laboratory as directed by the Architect. Additional testing as a result of non-conformances will be at the expense of the Contractor.

C. Shear studs shall be tested and inspected by Testing Laboratory in accordance with A WS D 1.1-96, Section 7. Submit three (3) copies of reports to Architect.

D. The steel fabricator shall be fully responsible for insuring that all steel fabrication and erection is in accordance with the Contract Documents. Failure of Architect or Testing Laboratory to detect defective work, workmanship, materials, or erection shall in no way prevent rejection of the work and the steel fabricator taking approved corrective action when such defects are discovered. The Architect or the Testing Laboratory shall not, thereby, be obligated to make a final acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 054000

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.

B. Related Sections include Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated on drawings.

2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.

B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General:

1. Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" .

2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout, spacing, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

2. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

E. Mill certificates signed by steel sheet producer indicating that steel complies with requirements.

F. Meeting Records: Minutes of pre-installation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

C. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and A WS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel. "

E. Fire- Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."

1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design." 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."

G. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY,- STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
2. Dale/Incor.
3. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
4. National Gypsum Company

2.2 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for meta~ unless otherwise indicated.

2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653, G40, hot-dip galvanized, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; I? unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free .Jl. vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flange Width: 1 inch plus the design gap for I-story structures and 1 inch plus twice the design gap for other applications.

2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A l003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:

1. Supplementary framing.

2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.

3. Web stiffeners.

4. Anchor clips.

5. End clips.

6. Foundation clips.

7. Gusset plates.

8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.

9. Joist hangers and end closures.

10. Hole reinforcing plates.

11. Backer plates.

2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTMA 123.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153, Class C.

C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

D. Mechanical Fasteners:

1. ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.

2. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with A WS standards.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: [SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21 035] [ASTM A 780].

B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

C. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.

D. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.

2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.

3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with A WS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.

4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable

tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

C. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing ~ General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

    a. Comply with A WS DI.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

    b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to

those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

F. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing.
Independently frame both sides of joints.

G. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation", in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.

H. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.

I. Erection Tolerances:

1. Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

2. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as indicated on drawings.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.

2. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing or in ftH studs and anchor to building structure.

3. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

2. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat strops to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 055000

METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes, but not limited to, the following:

1. Support angles.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, wedge-type inserts and other items indicated to be cast into concrete.

2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel".

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance of Ladders: Provide ladders capable of withstanding the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI AI4.3.

B. Thermal Movements:

1. Provide exterior metal fabrications that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

2. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Paint products.

2. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

2. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.

3. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel".

2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum".

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: V verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

B. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate wall and other contiguous construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

C. Provide allowance for trimming and fitting at site.

1.7 COORDINATION

Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.

B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.

C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.

2.3 FASTENERS

General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class *Fe/Zn* 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to A WS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79.

1. Use primer with a VOC content of 420 g/L (3.5-lb/gal.) or less when calculated according to 40 CFR

59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for re-galvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

D. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, noncorrosive, non-gaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal comers to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts, unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and comers of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete

the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.

C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated. Drill bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.

D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

E. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

2.7 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.8 METAL LADDERS

A. General:

1. Comply with ANSI AI4.3, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME AI7.I.
3. Space side rails 18 inches apart, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted brackets, made from same metal as ladder. Steel Ladders:

1. Side rails: Continuous, 3/S-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
2. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter steel bars.
3. Fit rungs in centerline of side rails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
4. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
5. Galvanize ladders, including brackets and fasteners.

2.9 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.10 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:

1. ASTM A 123, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
2. ASTM A 153, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:

1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone IB) and Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No.3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning".
2. Interiors (SSPC Zone IA): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning".

C. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No.1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touch-up Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-P A I for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
2. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061000

ROUGH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Wood blocking and nailers.
2. Plywood backing panels.
3. Framing with dimension lumber.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing".
2. Division 06 Section "Exterior Finish Carpentry" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in anther Section.
3. Division 06 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for nonstructural carpentry items exposed to view and not specified in another Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Rough Carpentry: Carpentry work not specified in other Sections and not exposed, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.

C. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
3. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
4. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
5. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used, net amount of preservative retained, and chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by

treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials, both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures when tested according to ASTM D 5516 and ASTM D 5664.

3. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

4. Include copies of warranties: From chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.

C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:

1. Preservative-treated wood.

2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.

3. Power-driven fasteners.

4. Powder-actuated fasteners.

5. Expansion anchors.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Source Limitations for Fire-Retardant- Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant treated wood product through one source from a single producer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.

2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.

3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

1.

5. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Plywood Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inches thick.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: A WP A C2 (lumber) and A WP A C9 (plywood), except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to A WP A C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and one of the following:

a. Ammonia cal, or amine, copper quat (ACQ).

b. Copper bis (dimethyldithiocarbamate) (CDDC).

c. Ammonia cal copper citrate (CC).

d. Copper azole, Type A (CBA-A).

e. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.

2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark each treated item with the treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat items indicated on drawings, and wood cants, mailers, blocking, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, provide materials that comply with performance requirements in A WP A C20 (lumber) and A WP A C27 (plywood). Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures, when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664, for lumber and ASTM D 5516, for plywood.

2. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.

3. Use Interior Type A High Temperature (HT), unless otherwise indicated. Use exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.

B. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER

A. General: Provide dimension lumber of grades indicated according to the American Lumber Standards Committee National Grading Rule provisions of the grading agency indicated.

B. Framing: Construction, Stud, or No.2 grade and any of the following species:

1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
2. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or Spruce-pine-fir; NELMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
   1. Blocking.
   2. Nailers.

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction, Stud, or No.2 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species:
   1. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   2. Hem-fir or Hem-fir (north); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP A.
   3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or Spruce-pine-fir; NELMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   1. Mixed southern pine, No.2 grade; SPIB.
   2. Hem-fir or Hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or Spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common grade; NELMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP A.

2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS I, Exposure I, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inches thick.

2. 7 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.

G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency. Material: Carbon-

steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

C. Apply field treatment complying with A WP A M4 to cut surfaces of preservative treated lumber and plywood.

D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. CABO NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.

2. "Fastening Schedule," in the Ohio Building Code.

E. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. Build anchor bolts into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, secure anchor bolts to formwork before concrete placement.

3.3 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

Fastening Methods: Screw to cold-formed metal framing or concrete masonry unit walls.

3.4 WOOD FRAMING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Framing Standard: Comply with AFPA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

B. General: Arrange studs so wide face of stud is perpendicular to direction of wall or partition and narrow face is parallel. Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Anchor or nail plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Construct comers and intersections with three or more studs. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

D. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Set headers on edge and support on jamb studs.

3.5 CEILING JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION

A. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified

above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.

B. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide I-by-6-inch nominal- size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.

C. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EP A-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EP A-registered label.

B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EP A-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EP A-registered label.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 061600

# SHEATHING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Building wrap.
4. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Division 07 Section "Metal Roof Panels" for underlayment materials over plywood sheathing.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
4. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
5. For building wrap, include data on air-/moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referenced standards.

C. Compliance Certificates:

1. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
2. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment quality mark.
3. For fire-retardant-treated wood that is not marked with classification marking of testing and inspecting agency.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test Response Characteristics:

1. For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory".

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE , AND HANDLING

Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Plywood: Eigher DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.

C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: A WPA C9

B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

C. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Application: Treat all plywood sheathing, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYW00D

A. General: Comply with performance requirements in A APA C27.

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.

2. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.

3. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Application:

1. Treat all plywood sheathing, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.

2.4 WALL SHEATHING

A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Glass Gold" by G-P Gypsum

Corporation.

2. Type and Thickness: Regular, ½ inch thick.

3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation

2.5 ROOF SHEATHING

A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.

2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 15/32 inch

2.6 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

A. Plywood Subflooring:

1. Exterior single-floor panels or sheathing.

2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 23/32 inch.

B. Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 4397, polyethylene sheet not less than 6.0 mils thick.

2.7 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272

D. Wood Screws: SAME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing:

1. ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

2. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing:

1. Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

2. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.

2.8 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING PAPER

A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type 1 air retarder; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam Weathermate Plus Brand Housewrap.

b. DuPont (E. I. Du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek Commercial Wrap.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 63 g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure).

3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.

B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacture for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

2.9 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing, and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.

B. Sheathing Tape for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing board and with a history of successful in-service use.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing:

1. Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

2. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.

b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. – Conn.; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.

C. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of shea5thing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. NES NER-272 for power-drive fasteners.

2. Table 2306.1, “Fastening Schedule,” in SBCCI’s “Standard Building Code:”.

D. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.

E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in ATA Form No. E30S, “Engineered Wood Construction Guide,” for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:

1. Roof Sheathing:

a. Nail to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.

b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.

c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.3 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer’s written instructions.

1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.

2. Install boards with 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.

C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

3.4 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING-PAPER INSTALLATION

A. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:

1. Cut back barrier ½ inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.

2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer’s written instructions.

1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

3.5 SHEATHING JIONT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT

A. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient quantity of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing board joints, and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners wit a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

3.6 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.

1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
3. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
4. After flashing ahs been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.7 PROTECTION

Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper securely fastened to framing. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06400

ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

.. Section 06100 – "Rough Carpentry"
.. Section 06200 – "Finish Carpentry"
.. Section 07900 – "Joint Sealers"
.. Section 09900 – "Painting"

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Extent of each type of architectural woodwork is indicated on drawings and in schedules.

B. Types of architectural woodwork include the following, and related work and trim:

1. Plastic Laminate cabinets and solid surface countertops.

2. Hardware for architectural woodwork.

C. Architectural woodwork and components are intended to be finish painted on-site, under Section 09900.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. AWI Quality Standard: Comply with applicable requirements of "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" published by the Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI), except as otherwise indicated.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Fabricators shall be experienced firms specializing in the types of architectural woodwork required for this project for at least 5 verifiable years and on at least 5 verifiable projects of similar size, scope, complexity, and quality of this project.

C. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for installation of architectural woodwork by a firm which can demonstrate at least 5 verifiable years successful experience in installing architectural woodwork items on at least 5 verifiable projects, similar in type and quality to those required for this project.

D. Refer to Section 01015 – "Special Conditions," for additional information and minimum experience requirements.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large scale details, attachment devices and other components.

1. Manufacturer's current and complete product data, for manufactured units of work including color selection data and samples; and design load capacities for wood columns, and their plinths and anchorage systems.

B. Samples: Submit the following samples:

1. Lumber and panel products with or for transparent finish; 6-inches x ¾-inch x 18-inches, for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.

2. Lumber and panel products with factory-applied opaque finish, 8-inches x 10-inches, for each finish system and color.

3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware Support Hardware: One unit of each type and finish, which will be returned for use on the project, upon request by the Contractor.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Protect woodwork during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration.

B. Do not deliver woodwork, until painting, wet work, grinding and similar operations which could damage, soil or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If, due to unforeseen circumstances, woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas meeting requirements specified for installation areas.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Conditioning: Woodwork Manufacturer and Installer shall advise Contractor of temperature and humidity requirements for woodwork installation and storage areas. Do not install woodwork until required temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in installation areas.

B. Maintain temperature and humidity in installation area as required to maintain moisture content of installed woodwork within a 1.0% tolerance of optimum moisture content, from date of installation through remainder of construction period. Require Woodwork Manufacturer to establish optimum moisture content and required temperature and humidity conditions.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Cabinet Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide premium grade custom made cabinets and woodwork from a millwork shop complying with requirements of “Quality Assurance” article above.

B. Plastic Laminate Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide solid, stippled, textured, and/or patterned high pressure decorate laminates of one of the following:

1. Corian (color to be determined) – Solid Surface Counter Tops
2. Equal Manufacturers acceptable – Submit to architect for review.

## 2.2 FABRICATION GENERAL:

A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for moisture content of lumber at time of fabrication and for relative humidity conditions in the installation areas.

B. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated with dowel, dado, glue and screw construction, with openings and mortises precut, where possible, to receive hardware and other items and work.

1. Ease edges to a 1/16-inch radius, for corners of cabinets and edges of solid wood (lumber) members less than 1-inch in nominal thickness, 1/8-inch radius for edges of rails and similar members over 1-inch in nominal thickness.

C. Complete fabrication, assembly, hardware application, and other work before shipment to project site to maximum extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

D. Pre-Cut Openings: Fabricate architectural woodwork with pre-cut openings, where possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams for proper size and shape. Smooth edges of cutoffs and, where located in countertops and similar exposures seal edges of cutouts with a water-resistant coating.

E. Measurements: Before proceeding with fabrication of woodwork required to be fitted to other construction, obtain field measurements and verify dimensions and shop drawing details as required for accurate fit. A tight fit of less than 1/8-inch is expected.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT MATERIALS:

A. Where fire-retardant treated lumber is indicated, provide materials which are pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals and comply with the following requirements:

1. As required to comply with referenced standards and finish classifications necessary as per the Standard Building Code, NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code, authorities having jurisdiction, and acceptable in all respects for indoor use and finish requirements.

2. Fire-Retardant Chemicals: Use chemicals of type and for applications indicated which do not bleed-through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated lumber from untreated lumber.

B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide materials which are identical to those tested per ASTM methods and time periods indicated, are marked and listed for fire performance characteristics by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and comply with the following requirements:

1. Mill lumber after treatment, within limits set for wood removal which does not affect listed fire performance characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.

C. Marking: Identify treated lumber with separable paper classification marking of inspecting and testing agency, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Surface Burning Characteristics: Not exceeding values required by latest edition of the “Standard Building Code” and “NFPA 101” (with amendments), tested per ASTM E 84 for standard time period.

1. Flame Spread: Per Code.

2. Smoke Developed: Per Code.

E. Kiln-dry woodwork after treatment to levels required for non-fire-retardant treated woodwork materials. Maintain moisture content required by kiln drying, before and after treatment.

1. Discard treated lumber which does not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard. Do not use twisted, warped, bowed, discolored, or otherwise damaged or defective lumber.

## 2.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM, AND SILLS:

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 300.

B. Rout or groove backs of flat trim members, kerf backs of other wide flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

C. Assemble Casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.

D. Interior Trim and Sills for Transparent Finish (only where specifically indicated, if any). Comply with the following requirements:

1. Grade: Premium.

2. Lumber Species: White or Yellow Poplar.

3. Locations: Provide stained transparent finish within rooms which have new woodwork with transparent finish, and all other exposed locations, unless indicated otherwise.

E. Interior Trim and Sills for Opaque Finish (typical finish unless specifically indicated otherwise). Comply with the following requirements.

1. Grade: Premium.

2. Lumber Species: Any closed-grain hardwood listed in referenced woodworking standard.

3. Locations: Provide opaque finish within rooms which have new woodwork with opaque finish, unless indicated otherwise.

## 2.5 ARCHITECTURAL CABINET TOPS:

A. Quality Standard: Comply with applicable 400 and its Divisions 400B and 400C.

B. Type of Top – Solid Surface:

A. Solid polymer components

1. Cast, nonporous, filled polymer, not coated, laminated or of composite construction with through body colors meeting ANSI Z124.3 or ANSI Z124.6, having minimum physical and performance properties specified.

2. Superficial damage to a depth of 0.010 inch (.25 mm) shall be repairable by sanding and/or polishing.

3. Thickness: 3 cm

4. Edge treatment: Beveled

5. Color: To be selected from standard color palette.

## 2.6 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORY MATERIALS:

A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items which are specified in Division-8 Section 08700 – "Finish Hardware."

B. Cabinet Hardware Schedule: Refer to schedule at end of this Section for cabinet hardware required for architectural cabinets.

C. Hardware Standard: Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.9 "American National Standard for Cabinet Hardware" for items indicated by reference to BHMA numbers or referenced to this standard.

D. Hardware Finishes: Comply with BHMA 1301 for finishes indicated by BHMA Code Numbers or it not otherwise indicated, provide finishes complying with requirements indicated.

1. For exposed hardware comply with requirements indicated for finish and base indicated at the end of this Section 06400.

2. For concealed hardware provide manufacturer's standard brushed chrome or brass finish with complies with product class requirements of ANSI/BHMA A156.9, and to match exposed hardware on same cabinet unit.

## 2.7 FASTENERS AND ANCHORS:

A. Screws: Select material, type, size and finish required for each use. Comply with FS FF-S-11 for applicable requirements.

B. Nails: Select material, type, size and finish required for each use. Comply with FS FF-N-105 for applicable requirements.

C. Anchors: Select material, type, size and finish required by each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide non-ferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion-resistance. Provide toothed steel or lead expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts and anchors, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work for subsequent woodwork anchorage.

## 2.8 FINISHING OF INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK:

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 1500, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing of concealed surfaces and similar preparations for finishing of architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

## 2.9 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH (if any):

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 900.

1. Grade: Premium.

B. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood listed in referenced woodworking standard.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION:

A. Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas prior to installing.

B. Pre-Installation Meeting: Meet at project site prior to delivery of architectural woodwork and review coordination and environmental controls required for proper installation and ambient conditioning in areas to receive work. Include in meeting the Contractor; Architect and other Owner Representatives (if any);; Installers of architectural woodwork, we work such as plastering, other finishes, painting, mechanical work and electrical work; and firms or persons responsible for continued operation (whether temporary or permanent) of HVAC system as required to maintain temperature and humidity conditions. Proceed with woodwork installation only when everyone concerned agrees that required ambient conditions can be maintained.

C. Deliver concrete inserts and similar anchoring devices to be built into substrates, well in advance of time substrates are to be built.

1. Coordinate location and placement of concealed treated blocking (by others) prior to finish materials installations.

D. Prior to installation of architectural woodwork, examine shop fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including back priming and removal of packing.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION:

A. Quality Standard: Install woodwork to comply with AWI Section 1700 for the same grade specified in Part 2 of this Section for type of woodwork involved.

B. Install woodwork plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8-inch in 8'-0" for plumb and level (including tops); and with no variations in flushness of adjoining surfaces.

C. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.

1. Seal all hardware cuts, routed slots, etc., before installation of hardware.

D. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built-in directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required, use fine finishing nails for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork, and matching final finish where transparent finish is indicated.

E. Standing and Running Trim, and Sills: Install with maximum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to the greatest extent possible. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter at corners and comply with referenced Quality Standards for joinery.

F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so that doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete the installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated. Maintain veneer sequence matching (if any) of cabinets with transparent finish.

1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8-inch in 96-inches sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.

G. Wood Storage Shelving: Complete the assembly of units and install in the areas indicated, including hardware and accessories as indicated.

H. Tops: Anchor securely to base units and other support systems indicated. Caulk space between backsplash and wall with specified sealant.

1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8-inch in 96-inches sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.

I. Wood Panels: Anchor panels to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips and by blind nailing on backup strips, splined-connection strips, and similar associated trim and framing. Do not face nail unless otherwise indicated.

1. Install flush panels with no more than 1/16-inch in 96-inches vertical cup or bow and 1/8-inch in 96-inches horizontal variation from a true plane.

J. Refer to Section 09900 – "Painting," for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork.

## 3.3 ADJUSTMENT, CLEANING, FINISHING AND PROTECTION:

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork where possible to eliminate defects functionally and visually; where not possible to repair replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate and adjust hardware.

C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch-up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

D. Complete the finishing work specified as work of this Section, to whatever extent not completed at shop or prior to installation of woodwork.

E. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Fabricator and Installer, which ensures architectural woodwork being without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.

## 3.4 CABINET HARDWARE SCHEDULE:

A. General: Subject to requirements and finishes stated above, furnish the following items in quantities and at locations indicated, by named manufacturers or equivalent products acceptable to Architect.

1. Cabinet Hinges: 170$^{o}$ adjustable "CLIP System" concealed self-closing hinges as manufactured by Julius Blum, Inc., or equivalent by Grass or Stanley.

B. Cabinet Door and Drawer Pulls:

1. Wire pulls, equivalent to Stanley No. 4484, solid brass (ANSI B12012), 4-inches long, with 1-inch clearance. Finish to match Section 08710 – "Finish Hardware" finish in room(s) where occurs.

C. Cabinet Door Catches: Manufacturer's standard 2-screw sill mounted unit made of molded nylon, lipped over sill to form bumper and hold in place, with 2-screw mounted heavy door mounted unit with nylon roller; provide spring-mounted units where required.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers: Any of manufacturer's listed for other cabinet hardware.

D. Drawer Slides: Heavy Duty, non-corrosive (galvanized) full extension ball bearing slides rated at 100-pounds, with positive stop, and self-closing and lift-out disconnect features; Model NO. 1429, as manufactured by Knape & Vogt, or equivalent by Blum or Grant.

1. At legal size drawers, use K&V No. 1483 or equivalent, rated at 150-pounds, with same features as noted above.

E. Shelf Standards: Manufacturer's standard steel units with anchors and supports 5/8-inch wide x 3/16-inch high, adjustable on ½-inch centers; Series 255, as manufactured by K&V, or equivalent by Grant or Stanley.

1. Wood Cabinets: Model No. 255 BRN with No. 256 BRN supports and matching fasteners.

2. Omit standards where fixed shelves are indicated.

3. All standards to be recess mounted (flush in routed dados), unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Locks: Where indicated on the Drawings, provide cabinet manufacturer's standard 5-disc tumbler, cam type, keyed differently at each room and at each room and at each teller station, and master keyed.

1. Furnish 2 keys for each lock.

2. Furnish 5 master keys.

3. Finish to match Section 08710 – "Finish Hardware" finish in room(s) where occurs.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 072100

# THERMAL INSULATION

## PART 1- GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Sound attenuation insulation.
2. Concealed building insulation.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 07 Section "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
2. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for insulation installed as part of a perimeter fire-resistive joint system.
3. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation" .
4. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Insulation".
5. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation".

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for insulation products.

C. Research Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source.!

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering glass-fiber insulation products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. CertainTeed Corporation.
2. Johns Manville Corporation.
3. Knauf Fiber Glass.
4. Owens Coming.

2.2 INSULATING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide insulating materials that comply with requirements and with referenced standards. Preformed Units: Sizes to fit applications indicated; selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths.

B. Sound Attenuation Insulation (Unfaced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation):
ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from glass; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

C. Concealed Building Insulation (Faced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation):
ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder membrane on one face; consisting of fibers manufactured from glass.

D. Open Cell Spray Foam Insulation: Two-component, polyurethane cellular foam with a nominal density of 0.5 pcf. Foam shall have the following minimum physical properties when cured:

1. Apparent Density: 0.5 pcf when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1622.
2. R-Value (aged) when tested in accordance with ASTM C 518: 3.9 at 1 inch, 13 at 3.5 inches, 19 at 5.5 inches.
3. Oxygen Index: 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2863.
4. Compressive Strength: 0.5 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1621.
5. Fungi Resistance: Zero Rating when tested in accordance with ASTM G 21.
6. Air Leakage: Less than 0.02 (L/s)/m2 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283.
7. Sound Transmission Coefficient: 51 (STC) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 90.
8. Noise Reduction Coefficient: 0.7 (NRC) when tested in accordance with ASTM C 423.
9. Open Cell Content: Greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2846.
10. Tensile Strength: Less than 5 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1623.
11. Shear Strength: 1.4 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM C 273.
12. Permeability: 21 perm-inch when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96.

13. Dimensional Stability: Less than 15 percent change in volume when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2126.
14. Surface Burning Characteristics:

    a. Flame Spread/Smoke Developed: At maximum 4 inch (102 mm) thickness, flame spread index of less than 25 and a smoke developed index of less than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.
    b. Corner Test: Thickness up to 12 inches (305 mm) for wall cavities and 16 inches for ceiling cavities meets NFPA 286 when covered with 1/2 inch (13 mm) gypsum board or equivalent thermal barrier.

2.3 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice and snow.

C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located on inside of insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm side of construction, unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces, except for fire stopping. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

C. Install mineral-fiber blankets in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use blanket widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place blankets in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping stapling flanges to flanges of metal studs.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

Install 3-inch-thick, unfaced glass-fiber blanket insulation over suspended ceilings at partitions in a width that extends insulation 48 inches on either side of partition.

3.6 PROTECTION

Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 076200

# FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to work of this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry”
2. Section 07540 - “Thermoplastic Membrane Roofing”
3. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers”
4. Section 09900 - “Painting”

### 1.2 SUMMARY:

A. This Section includes the following, where indicated, and where required by project conditions, and which are not part of other Sections:

1. Prefinished metal counter flashing and base flashing.
2. Miscellaneous prefinished metal wall flashing, counterflashing, and reglets.
3. Exposed prefinished metal trim/fascia units, parapet caps (copings), gutters, downspouts (with precast concrete splashblocks at grade; metal splash pans at roofing), and other items as indicated on the Drawings.
4. Elastic flashing at top of all curbs, top course of double wythe walls, at perimeters of all exterior wall openings (i.e.: doors, windows, louvers, etc.), through-wall flashing, and elsewhere as indicated.
5. Miscellaneous sheet metal accessories as indicated and as required by project conditions.

B. Exposed metal flashing is intended to be prefinished baked enamel, as specified, in manufacturer’s standard non-metallic color(s) selected by Architect after bidding.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product data for Flashing, Sheet Metal and Accessories: Manufacturer’s current technical product data, installation instructions and general recommendations for each specified sheet material, fabricated product, coating system, and color selection data.

C. Samples of the following flashing, sheet metal, and accessory items:

1. 12-inch-long samples of factory-fabricated products exposed as finished work. Provide complete with specified factory finish.
2. Physical samples for color selections, where color selection is required.

D. Shop drawings showing layout, profiles, methods of joining, and anchorages details, including major counterflashings, trim/fascia units, expansion joint systems, and other fabricated work. Provide layouts at 1/4-inch scale and details at 3-inch scale.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Coordinate work of this section with interfacing and adjoining work for proper sequencing of each installation. Ensure best possible weather resistance and durability of work and protection of materials and finishes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL, TRIM UNITS, FLASHING, COPING, ANY GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS, AND AT TRIM MATERIALS:

A. Fabricate of minimum 24-gage metal, with minimum 50,000 p.s.i. yield, with 3-coat full strength (70-percent) Kynar 500 resin (20-year) finish. Provide one of the following base metals, to be the same base metal used for other sheet metal applications and systems:

1. ASTM A 792 aluminum-zinc allow coated steel sheet ("Galvalume"), or
2. ASTM A 653, G-90 (galvanized) zinc-coated steel sheet.
3. Typical metal flashing, except where specifically indicated otherwise.

B. Prefinished Metal Drip Edge (if any): Brake-formed sheet metal with at least a 4-inch roof deck flange at "flat" roofs; 1/2" raised edge at single-ply roofing; with a 1-1/2-inch fascia flange with a 3/8-inch hemmed edge drip at lower edge at any metal roofing, which is not already included with metal roofing system. Furnish in lengths of at least 10 feet.

C. Prefinished Metal Flashing and 2-Inch High Diverter Strips (if any):

1. Install diverter strips 1'-0" above low roof edge(s) of sloped roofs, at all locations over exterior doors, and over exterior mechanical units where roof edge gutters or parapet walls do not occur.

D. Prefinished Coping System: Provide prefinished aluminum coping system, including chairs, "drainable gutters" at joints, clips, trim and all necessary accessories for a complete and properly installed water-tight system.

1. Product/Manufacturer: Manufactured or brake-metal system, equivalent to "AP Standard Coping" system, as manufactured by Architectural Products Co.; Covington, Kentucky; Phone: 1-606-341-1171.

a. Baked enamel finish on minimum 0.063" (1.6 mm) aluminum sheet or extrusion, with depths and widths indicated on the Drawings, including all necessary trim and accessories as recommended by manufacturer and required by project conditions.

2. At Contractor's option, provide similar profile, but from brake-metal coping system, with continuous clip across top of and length of parapets (full secondary concealed wall cap), with 1-inch high standing seam joints - filled with sealant, double-folded, and corners turned down at 45-degrees.

E. Finishes:

1. Finish for any exposed metal flashings, coping systems, etc., shall be 3-coat 70% resin "Kynar 500" coating (i.e.: primer, color coat and clear topcoat), complying with AAMA 2605.2, with a total dry film thickness of not less than 2.4-mils, and manufacturer's standard 20-year finish warranty.

2. Colors: As selected by Architect, from manufacturer's standard solid colors - 15 colors minimum to select from, to include in part, color(s) to match existing metalwork, and/or clear anodized aluminum finish - which may require a solid color or a solid color metallic finish to achieve.

## 2.2 LEAD FLASHING (AT VENT STACKS):

A. 4-pound lead sheet, fabricated to extend 4 inches minimum onto roof and turn down 1 inch minimum down inside vent stacks.

1. For metal roofing, provide counterflashing over vent stacks, curbs, and other penetrations' flashings in same material and color as metal roofing.

## 2.3 ELASTIC VINYL SHEET FLASHING:

A. Flexible sheet flashings especially formulated from virgin polyvinyl chloride with plasticizers and other modifiers, to remain flexible and waterproof in concealed masonry applications, black in color and of thickness indicated below.

1. Thickness: 30 mils.; Smooth finish at both sides (not grained, textured, etc.).

B. Product/Manufacturer: "Nervastral 300", or pre-approved equivalent submitted at least 10-days prior to original Bid Date and subsequently approved, including mastic, and where required companion surface conditioner product, and all other materials and components required.

C. Application: Use where flashing is fully concealed, including in part, over roof curbs, wall flashing, through-wall flashing at exterior masonry walls, below any exterior caps and sills, at perimeter of all openings in exterior walls (i.e.: doors, windows, louvers, etc.), and elsewhere as indicated and/or required by project conditions.

1. At heads and sills of openings, and similar locations, turn ends up to form a dam, and to direct water / moisture to weeps and out of walls.

D. Adhesive for Flashings: Type recommended by manufacturer of flashing material, for each use indicated; All joints shall be sealed.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES:

A. Solder:

1. For use with steel or copper: Provide 50 - 50 tin/lead solder (ASTM B 32), with rosin flux.
2. For use with stainless steel: Provide 60 - 40 tin/lead solder (ASTM B 32), with acid-chloride type flux, except use rosin flux over tinned surfaces.

B. Fasteners: Same metal as flashing/sheet metal or other non-corrosive metal as recommended by sheet manufacturer. Match finish of exposed heads with material being fastened.

C. Bituminous Coating: SSPC - Paint 12, solvent-type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat.

D. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; non-hardening, non-skinning, non-drying and non-migrating sealant.

E. Elastomeric Sealant: Generic type recommended by manufacturer of metal and fabricator of components being sealed and complying with requirements for joint sealants as specified in Section 07900 - "Joint Sealers."

F. Paper Slip Sheet: 5-lb. rosin-sized building paper.

G. Counterflashing and Reglets: Metal units of type and profile indicated, or if not indicated, as required for the intended use, compatible with flashing indicated, noncorrosive.

1. At surface-mounted parapet and wall flashing conditions, equivalent to 2-piece "Springlok" Flashing Systems, as manufactured by Fry Reglet; Norcross, Georgia; Phone: 1-770-441-2337, except where brake-formed metal is specifically indicated.

H. Metal Accessories: Provide sheet metal clips, straps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units as required for installation of work, matching or compatible with material being installed, noncorrosive, size and gage required for performance.

I. Fibered Aluminum Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type II; FS TT-C-1079. Equivalent to Perma-Seal coating No. 3910; Brush applied only.

## 2.5 FABRICATED UNITS:

A. General Metal Fabrication: Shop-fabricate work to greatest extent possible. Comply with details shown and with applicable requirements of SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and other recognized industry practices. Fabricate for waterproof and weather-resistant performance, with expansion provisions for running work, sufficient to permanently prevent leakage, damage, or deterioration of the work. Form work to fit substrates. Comply with material manufacturer instructions and recommendations for forming material. Form exposed sheet metal work without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks, true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

1. At metal roofing and horizontal or sloped metal flashings over 6-inches wide, provide custom configurations and continuous brake-metal roofing system, with continuous concealed clip anchors rated for I-90 uplift conditions, with 1-inch high standing seam Pittsburgh lock-seam joints - filled with sealant, double-folded, and corners turned down at 45-degrees.
2. Provide matching materials and finish for fascia metal covering, flashing, counterflashing and trim.

B. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in sheet metal with standing seam at exposed tops and lapped side or edge seams. For metal other than aluminum, tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder. Form aluminum seams with epoxy seam sealer. Pop-rivet joints for additional strength where required and at vertical faces.

C. Separations: Provide for separation of metal from non-compatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer/fabricator.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS:

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's current written installation instructions and recommendations, with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual," and reviewed submittals and shop drawings.

1. Install manufactured, bought-out items in accordance with manufacturer's current written instructions and recommendations.
2. Anchor units of work securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.

B. Underlayment: Where stainless steel or aluminum is to be installed directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a slip sheet of red rosin paper and a course of polyethylene underlayment.

C. Bed flanges of work in a thick coat of bituminous roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.

D. Install reglets to receive counterflashing in manner and by methods indicated, in a straight line and single elevation.

E. Install counterflashing in reglets, by snap-in seal arrangement for anchorage and filling reglet with mastic or elastomeric sealant, as indicated and depending on degree of sealant exposure, or if not indicated, as recommended by referenced standards, flashing and roofing manufacturers, and otherwise as required for the intended application.

F. Nail or anchor flanges of expansion joint units to curb nailers, at maximum spacing of 6 inches o.c. Fabricate seams at joints between units with minimum 3-inch overlap, to form a continuous, waterproof system.

G. Flashing:

1. Comply with manufacturer's current written instructions and recommendations for installation of all systems components in all applications indicated on the Drawings, and as otherwise required by project conditions.
2. At any parapet wall and roof curbs applications, extend flashing continuous, over top of wall or curb, and turn down one inch (1") minimum on exterior side of wall and mechanically anchor in place at side of top of wall, below and concealed by continuous metal clip anchor (acting as termination bar) and metal cap flashing or coping, and down over top edge of roofing flashing material at roof side.

## 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION:

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances that might cause corrosion of metal or deterioration of finishes.

1. After cleaning, repair and restore damaged metal and metal finishes with prefinished paint manufacturer's special air-drying touch-up paint, in manner such that touch-up is not apparent.
2. Replace damaged flashing and sheet metal work which cannot be repaired and when finish repair and restoration is not acceptable to Architect.

B. Protection: Advise Contractor of required procedures for surveillance and protection of flashings and sheet metal work during construction to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration other than natural weathering at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 079200

JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section and joints in new and existing construction:

1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
   a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
   b. Joints in exterior wood trim and siding.
   c. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
   d. Joints between different materials listed above.
   e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
   f. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and overhead surfaces.
   g. Existing joints disturbed by selective demolition.
   h. Joints between existing and new construction.
      1. Other joints as indicated.
2. Exterior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
   a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
   b. Existing joints disturbed by selective demolition.
   c. Joints between existing and new construction.
   d. Other joints as indicated.
3. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
   a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
   b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
   c. Tile control and expansion joints.
   d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry walls and partitions.
   e. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior and exterior doors and windows.
   f. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
   g. Existing joints disturbed by selective demolition.
   h. Joints between existing and new construction.

i. Other joints as indicated.

4. Interior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:

a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.

b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.

c. Existing joints disturbed by selective demolition.

d. Joints between existing and new construction.

e. Other joints as indicated.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for masonry control and expansion joint filers and gaskets.

2. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire resistance-rated construction.

3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.

4. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in l/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Preconstruction Field Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on preconstruction testing specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:

1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.

2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

H. Field Test Report Log: For each elastomeric sealant application.

I. Product Test Reports: Based on comprehensive testing of product formulations performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.

1. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

K. Meeting Records: Minutes from Pre-Installation Conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.

2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.

3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.

4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency or manufacturer based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period preceding the Notice to Proceed with the Work.

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.

3. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.

E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:

1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:

a Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.

b. Each type of non-elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.

3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.

4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.

a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix Xl in ASTM C 1193.

b. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

5. Report whether sealant in joint connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
6.Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion- Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

F. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

2. When joint substrates are wet.

3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.

4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within warranty period of2 (two) years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within warranty period of 10 (ten) years from date of Substantial Completion.

D. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:

1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attainable to design or construction.

2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide interior sealants and sealant primers that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPAMethod 24):

1. Sealants: 250 glL.
2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 gl.
3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 gl.

C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.

B. Single-Component Neutral- and Basic-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
   b. GE Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
   c. Tremco; Spectrem 1 (Basic).
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (non-sag).
3. Class: 100/50.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (non-traffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
6. Stain- Test-Response Characteristics: Non-staining to porous substrates per ASTM C 1248.
7. Applications: Exterior non-traffic and interior wet areas.

C. Multicomponent Pourable Urethane Sealant:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; POURTHANE.
   b. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-200.

c. Tremco; THC-900.

2. Type and Grade: M (multicomponent) and P (pourable).

3. Class: 25.

4. Use Related to Exposure: T (traffic).

5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

6. Applications: Exterior and interior traffic areas.

2.3 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

A. Latex Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.

B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 600.

2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.

3. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac.

4. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

C. Application: Interior joints, except at wet areas, traffic joints, and locations where acoustical or fire-rated joint sealants are required.

2.4 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS

A Preformed Foam Sealant: Manufacturer's standard preformed, pre-compressed, open cell foam sealant that is manufactured from high-density urethane foam impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent; is factory produced in pre-compressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; is coated on one side with a pressure sensitive adhesive and covered with protective wrapping; develops a watertight and airtight seal when compressed to the degree specified by manufacturer.

B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1.EMSEAL Joint Systems, Ltd.; Emseal25V. 2. Illbruck

Sealant Systems, Inc.; Wilseal600.

C. Properties: Permanently elastic, mildew resistant, nonmigratory, nonstammg, and compatible with joint substrates and other joint sealants. Density: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Application: As indicated on Drawings.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint filers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type as approved in writing by joint sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for

preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

C. Masking Tape: Non-staining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.

2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

   a. Concrete.

   b. Masonry.

3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

   a. Metal.

   b. Glass.

   c. Vitreous china.

   d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates, where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate test~ or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to . materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

E. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

F. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

G. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A m ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint configuration where indicated per Figure 5B in ASTM C 1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration ·of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 5C in ASTM C 1193. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

6. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping, taking care not to pull or stretch material, producing seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures where expansion of sealant requires acceleration to produce seal, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:

a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate.

b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.

2. Test Method:

a. Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab in Appendix XI in ASTM C 1193, as appropriate for type of joint sealant application indicated.

b. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; do this by extending cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

3. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field-adhesion-test log.

a. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.

b. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.

c. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.

4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

B. Manufacturer's Field-Adhesion Testing: Perform other field-adhesion testing as required by manufacturer for warranty execution.

C. Evaluation of Field Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with

cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081113

HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry”
2. Section 08710 - “Finish Hardware”
3. Section 09250 - “Gypsum Drywall”
4. Section 09900 - “Painting”

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Work described in this section includes steel doors and steel frames.

1. All frames shall be equally rabbetted.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Provide doors and frames complying with Steel Door Institute “Recommended Specifications: Standard Steel Doors and Frames” (SDI-100) and as herein specified.

B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies:

1. Where fire-rated door assemblies are indicated or required, provide fire-rated door and frame assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 “Standard for Fire Doors and Windows,” and have been tested, listed and labeled in accordance with ASTM E 152 “Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies” by a nationally recognized independent testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Labels mounted on doors and door frames must indicate the time rating of the door/frame assembly.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s technical product data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Submit for fabrication and installation of steel doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, conditions at openings, details of construction, location and installation requirements of finish hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

2. Provide schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on contract drawings.

3. Coordinate glazing frames and stops with glass and glazing requirements.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver hollow metal work cartoned or crated to provide protection during transit and job storage. Provide additional sealed plastic wrapping for factory finished doors.

B. Inspect hollow metal work upon delivery for damage. Minor damages may be repaired provided finish items are equivalent in all respects to new work and acceptable to Architect; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.

C. Store doors and frames at building site under cover. Place units on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Avoid use of non-vented plastic or canvas shelters which could create humidity chamber. If cardboard wrapper on door becomes wet, remove carton immediately. Provide 1/4-inch spaces between stacked doors to promote air circulation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide steel doors and frames by one of the following:

1. Steel Doors and Frames, (General):

a. Amweld Div, American Welding & Mfg. Co.,
b. Builder's Manufacturing Company
c. BYMOCO Metal Fabricators, Inc.
d. Ceco Corp.
e. Curries Manufacturing, Inc.
f. Dittco Products Inc.
g. Fenestra Corp.
h. Habersham Metal Products Company
i. Mesker Industries, Inc.
j. Overly Manufacturing Company
k. Pioneer Bldrs. Products Corp./Div. CORE Industries, Inc.
l. Republic Builders Products Corp./Subs. Republic Steel.
m. SteelCraft/Div. American Standard Co.

2. Thermal Rated Steel Door and Frame Assemblies:

a. Subject to compliance with requirements, any above named manufacturer.
b. Ceco Corp.
c. Copco Door Co.
d. Curries Mfg., Inc.
e. Fenestra Corp.
f. Mesker Industries, Inc.
g. Pioneer Bldrs, Products Corp./Div. CORE Industries, Inc.

## 2.2 MATERIALS:

A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheets and Strip: Commercial quality carbon steel, pickled and oiled, complying with ASTM A 569 and ASTM A 568.

B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheets: Commercial quality carbon steel, complying with ASTM A 366 and ASTM SA 568.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheets: Zinc-coated carbon steel sheets of commercial quality, complying with ASTM A 526, with ASTM A 525, G60 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.

D. Supports and Anchors: Fabricate of not less than 18-gage galvanized sheet steel.

E. Inserts, Bolts and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard units, except hot-dip galvanize items to be built into exterior walls, complying with ASTM A 153, Class C or D as applicable.

F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc dust content paint for repair of galvanized surfaces damaged by fabrication or welding, complying with M.I. Specification MIL-P-21035.

G. Shop Applied Primer: Rust-inhibitive enamel or paint, either air drying or baking, suitable as a base for specified finish paints.

## 2.3 FABRICATION:

A. Fabricate steel door and frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Wherever practicable, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at project site.

B. Fabricate exposed faces of doors and panels, including stiles and rails of non-flush units, from only cold-rolled steel.

C. Fabricate frames, concealed stiffeners, reinforcement, edge channels, louvers and moldings from either cold-rolled or hot-rolled steel (at fabricator's option).

D. Fabricate exterior doors, panels and frames from galvanized sheet steel. Close top and bottom edges of exterior doors as integral part of door construction or by addition of minimum 16-gauge inverted steel channels.

1. Use galvanizing repair paint for surfaces damaged by fabrication or welding.

E. Exposed Fasteners: Unless otherwise indicated, provide countersunk flat Phillips heads for exposed screws and bolts.

F. Thermal-Rated (Insulating) Assemblies:

1. At exterior locations and elsewhere as shown or scheduled, provide doors which have been fabricated as thermal insulating door and frame assemblies and tested in accordance with ASTM C 236.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide urethane insulated thermal-rated assemblies with U factor of 0.12 Btu, (hr./ft2./F Degrees) or better.

G. Finish Hardware Preparation:

1. Prepare doors and frames to receive mortise and concealed finish hardware in accordance with final Finish Hardware Schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A 115 series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware.

2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive surface applied hardware. Drilling and tapping for surface-applied finish hardware may be done at project site.

3. Locate finish hardware as indicated on final shop drawings, or if not indicated, in accordance with "Recommended Locations for Builders' Hardware," published by Door and Hardware Institute.

H. Shop Painting:

1. Clean, treat and paint exposed surfaces of steel door and frame units, including galvanized surfaces.

2. Clean steel surfaces of mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt and other foreign materials before application of paint.

3. Use galvanizing repair paint for surfaces damaged by fabrication or welding, prior to prime coat.

4. Apply shop coat of prime paint of even consistency to provide a uniformly finished surface ready to receive finish paint.

5. Do not paint fire labels on doors or frames.

## 2.4 STANDARD STEEL DOORS:

A. Provide metal doors of types and styles as indicated on drawings or schedules, of seamless, hollow steel construction with 16-gauge face sheets. Form exterior doors of hot dip galvanized steel.

## 2.5 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES:

A. Provide metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelights, borrowed lights, and other openings, of types and styles as shown on drawings and schedules. Conceal fastenings, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricated frames of minimum 16-gauge cold-rolled furniture steel.

1. Frames for doors 7'-10" or more in height and/or over 3'-5" in width: 14 gauge cold-rolled furniture steel, and one additional hinge, whether or not indicated in hardware schedule.

B. Frames shall be formed by press brake with corners sharp and true. Corners shall be mitered and accurately fitted, and shall be fully electrically welded and then ground smooth. Removable spreaders shall be welded to the bottom of the frame. Frames shall be accurately mortise for hardware.

C. A minimum of three wall anchors shall be provided at each jamb, except four at doors 7'-10" high or more, and six at doors 10-foot high or more. Anchors shall be attached to door frames, adjustable, suitable for wall conditions and job requirements, and shall be 16 gauge minimum. Floor anchors shall be provided and welded to foot of each jamb with two 5/16" holes for securing to the floor.

D. Reinforcements of adequate gauge shall be provided for strikes, closers and brackets and other surface applied hardware for field drilling and tapping.

E. Form exterior frames of hot dip galvanized steel.

F. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive 3 silencers on strike jambs of single-swing frames and 2 silencers on heads of double-swing frames. Provide silencers equivalent to "GJ64" silencers as manufactured by Glenn-Johnson Corp., for metal frames, when not provided under the work of Section 08710 - "Finish Hardware."

1. Provide additional door silencers at doors over 3'-0" wide or 7'-0" in height.

G. Plaster Guards: Provide 26-gauge steel plaster guards or mortar boxes, welded to frame, at back of finish hardware cutouts where mortar or other materials might obstruct hardware operation.

## 2.6 DOOR LOUVERS:

A. Provide prefinished louvers according to SDI 111C, at locations indicated, with blades or baffles formed of 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) thick cold-rolled steel sheet set into minimum 0.0359-inch (0.9-mm) thick steel frame; Galvanized at exterior.

1. Sight-Proof Louvers: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted Y-shaped blades. Minimum free air area calculated per AMCA shall be 36-percent.

2. Finish:

a. Surface Preparation: Solvent clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, to comply with SSPC-SP 5 (White Metal Blast Cleaning) or SSPC-SP 8 (Pickling).

b. Pretreatment: Immediately after surface preparation, apply conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.

c. Baked Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard 2-coat baked enamel finish, consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat that complies with ANSI A250.3. Comply with paint manufacturer's current written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.0508 mm).

d. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of choices for standard non-metallic colors and gloss.

3. Final finish painting is specified in Section 09900 - "Painting," not the work of this Section 08110.

B. Provide removable bird screens for exterior louvers.

1. Fabricate screen frames of same metal and finish as louver units to which secured, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Provide frames consisting of U-shaped metal for permanently securing screen mesh.

3. Use 1/4-inch x 1/4-inch mesh formed with 0.063-inch diameter aluminum wire.

4. Color: To match louver, or black.

5. Locate screens on inside face of louvers. Secure screens to louver frames with machine screws, spaced at each corner and at 12-inch o.c. between.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION:

A. General: Install standard steel doors, frames and accessories in accordance with final shop drawings and manufacturer's data, and as herein specified.

B. Placing Frames:

1. Comply with provisions of SDI-1-06 "Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames," unless otherwise indicated.

2. Except for frames located at in-place concrete or masonry, place frames prior to construction of enclosing walls and ceilings. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.

3. In masonry construction, locate a minimum of 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. Add 1 wall anchor per jamb at hinge and strike levels for each whole 1'-10" height increment over 6'-0"; Similar at glazed and cased openings.

4. At in-place concrete or masonry construction, set frames and secure to adjacent construction with machine screws and masonry anchorage devices.

5. In metal stud partitions, install at least 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. Attach wall anchors to studs with tapping screws. Add additional anchors as indicated in Paragraph 3.1-B3 above.

6. Install fire-rated frames in accordance with NFPA Std. No. 80.

C. Door Installation:

1. Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in SDI-100.

2. Place fire-rated doors with clearances as specified in NFPA Std. No. 80.

3. Install silencers after all painting of doors and frames has been completed.

### 3.2 ADJUST AND CLEAN:

A. Prime Coat Touch-up:

1. Immediately after erection, sand smooth any rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touch-up of compatible air-drying primer.

2. Use galvanizing repair paint for galvanized surfaces, prior to prime coat.

B. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating finish hardware items, leaving steel doors and frames undamaged and in complete and proper operating condition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 082110

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 09900 - “Painting”
3. Division 15 - “Mechanical” (Door Louvers and Frames)

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Work described in this section includes solid core flush wood doors with veneer faces and metal frames for any light openings.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, all wood doors will receive “transparent” finish specified in Section 09900 - “Painting”, or factory finish.

C. Note: Any wood doors indicated to have wood frames, shall have hardwood frames with opaque paint finish unless specifically indicated otherwise. Refer to Sections 06200 and 09900 for additional information and requirements.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit door manufacturer’s technical data for each type of door, including details of core and edge construction, and trim for openings and louvers.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating location and size of each door, elevation of each kind of door, details of construction, details of metal frames for light openings, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire ratings, and other pertinent data.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Quality Standards: Comply with the following standards:

1. NWWDA Quality Standard: I.S.1 “Industry Standard for Wood Flush Doors”, of National Wood Window and Door Association (NWWDA).
2. AWI Quality Standard: “Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards”, including Section 1300 “Architectural Flush Doors”, of Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) for grade of door, core construction, finish and other requirements exceeding those of NWWDA quality standard.

B. NWWDA Quality Marking:

1. Mark each wood door with NWWDA Wood Flush Door Certification Hallmark certifying compliance with applicable requirements of NWWDA I.S. 1 Series.

2. For manufacturers not participating in NWWDA Hallmark Program, a certification of compliance may be substituted for marking of individual doors.

C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Provide wood doors which are identical in materials and construction to units tested in door and frame assemblies per ASTM E 152 and which are labeled and listed for ratings indicated by UL, Warnock Hersey or other testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Manufacturer:

1. Obtain doors from a single manufacturer, selecting from manufacturers listed herein.
2. Other manufacturers may be considered, however, approval must be requested from the Architect in writing at least ten (10) days prior to original bid date. Architect will issue only written approval, via letter and/or Addendum, and conditionally subject to compliance with specified requirements.

## 1.5 PRODUCT DELIVER, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Protect wood doors during transit, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration. Comply with requirements of referenced standards and recommendations of NWWDA pamphlet “How to Store, Handle, Finish, Install, and Maintain Wood Doors” as well as with manufacturer’s instructions.

B. Identify each door with individual opening numbers which correlate with designation system used on shop drawings for door, frames, and hardware, using temporary, removable or concealed markings.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Conditioning:

1. Do not deliver or install doors until conditions for temperature and relative humidity have been stabilized and will be maintained in storage and installation areas during remainder of construction period to comply with the following requirements applicable to project’s geographical location:
2. Referenced AWI quality standard including Section 100-S-3 “Moisture Content”.

## 1.7 WARRANTY:

A. General: Warranties shall run concurrently with, be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have under the Contract Documents or otherwise.

B. Door Manufacturer’s Warranty:

1. Submit written agreement on door manufacturer’s standard form signed by Manufacturer, Installer and Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace defective doors that have warped (bow, cup or twist), or that show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers, or do not conform to tolerance limitations of referenced quality standards.
2. Warranty shall also include refinishing and reinstallation which may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors where defect was not apparent prior to hanging.
3. Warranty shall be in effect during following period to time after date of Substantial Completion.

a. Solid Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

C. Contractor's Responsibilities: Replace or refinish doors where Contractor's work contributed to rejection or to voiding of manufacturer's warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide doors on one of the following:

1. Solid Core Doors with Wood Veneer Faces:

   a. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
   b. Eggers Industries, Architectural Door Division.
   c. Ipik Door Co., Inc.
   d. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
   e. Oshkosh Architectural Door Co.

2. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire Rated and Other Doors: Manufacturer's standard beveled or square frame of 18-gage cold-rolled steel, factory-primed, and approved for use in door of fire-rating indicated or required, and in other doors where indicated.

### 2.2 INTERIOR FLUSH WOOD DOORS:

A. Solid Core Doors: Comply with the following requirements.

1. Faces for Transparent Finish: Birch, Plain Sliced; Consistent similar appearance on all doors, with no "green" or "brown" colored wood.

   a. Similar color and appearance at both sides of doors.

2. AWI Grade:

   a. Transparent Finish: Premium; Veneer Grade: A or better.

3. Solid Core Construction: PC-7 (Particle board core, 7-ply, hot-pressed method), except at wood doors where 30 percent or more of their area is glass use SLC-7 (Staved lumber core, 7-ply, hot-pressed method).

B. Fire-Rated Solid Core Doors:

1. Comply with the following requirements - Faces and AWI Grade: Provide faces and grade to match non-rated doors in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Construction: Manufacturer's standard core construction as required to provide fire-resistance rating indicated.
3. Edge Construction: Provide manufacturer's standard laminated edge construction for improved screw-holding capability and split resistance as compared to edges composed of a single layer of treated lumber.
4. Pairs: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles which are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed steel edges and astragals.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine installed door frames prior to hanging door:

1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with plumb jambs and level heads.
2. Reject doors with defects.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION:

A. Hardware: For installation see Division 8 Section “Finish Hardware”, of these specifications.

B. Manufacturer’s Instructions:

1. Install wood doors to comply with manufacturer’s current written instructions and recommendations, and to comply with referenced AWI standard, and as indicated.
2. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames in accordance with requirements of NFPA 80.
3. Trim light openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.

C. Job-Fit Doors:

1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors. Machine doors of hardware. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining.
2. Fitting Clearances for Non-Rated Doors: Provide 1/8" at jambs and heads; 1/16" per leaf at meeting stiles for pairs of doors; and 1/8" from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4" clearance from bottom of door to top of threshold.
3. Fitting Clearances for Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80.
4. Bevel non-rated doors 1/8" in 2" at lock and hinge edges.
5. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8" in 2" in lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Prefit Doors: Fit to frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

E. Factory-Finished Doors: Refer to Section 09900 - “Painting” for requirements for finishing wood doors.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND PROTECTION:

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors which do not swing or operate freely.

B. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that wood doors will be without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 084100

ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Section Includes: Kawneer Aluminum Entrances, glass and glazing, and door hardware and components.

1. Types of Kawneer Aluminum Hurricane Resistant Entrances include:

a. 350 IR Entrances; Medium stile, 3-1/2" vertical face dimension, 1-3/4" depth, Interior structural silicone glazed, High traffic/impact resistant applications.

b. IR 501 Framing System: 2-1/2" x 5", non-thermal, center glazed for 1-5/16" impact resistant glazing interior structural silicone glazed, screw spline fabrication.

B. Related Sections:

.. SECTION 07270 – "Fire Stopping"
.. SECTION 07900 – "Joint Sealers"
.. SECTION 08410 – "Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts"
.. SECTION 08710 – "Door Hardware"
.. SECTION 08800 – "Glass and Glazing"

### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION:

A. Entrance Performance Requirements:

1. Windloads: Provide immediate door framing for swing doors, including anchorage, capable of withstanding windload design pressures. These design pressures are based upon Florida Building Code, 2017 Edition.

2. Air Infiltration: For single acting offset pivot, butt hung or continuous geared hinge entrances in the closed and locked position, the test specimen shall be tested in accordance with DCBCCO Protocol PA 202 and ASTM E 283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf for pairs of doors. A pair of 6'0" x 8'0" entrance doors and frame shall not exceed 1.2 cfm\ft2.

3. Structural: Corner strength shall be tested per Kawneer's dual moment load test procedure and certified by an independent testing laboratory to ensure weld compliance and corner integrity [Testing procedure and certified test results available upon request.

4. Uniform Load: A static air design load of 85 psf (65 psf for 9/16" laminated infill) shall be applied in the positive and negative direction in accordance with DCBCCO Protocol PA 202 and ASTM E 330. There shall be no deflection in excess of l/180 of the span of any framing member. At a structural test load equal to 1.5 times the specified design load, no glass breakage shall occur.

5. Impact Resistance: Large Missile, tested in accordance with DCBCCO Protocols PA 201, PA 203, SBCCI SSTD-12 and ASTM E 1886 at a door opening of 6'0" x 8'0".

6. Forced Entry: Tested in accordance with SFBC 3603.2 (b) (5).

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. General: Prepare, review, approve, and submit specified submittals in accordance with "Conditions of the Contract" and Division 1 Submittals Sections. Product data, shop drawings, samples, and similar submittals are defined in "Conditions of the Contract."

B. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:

1. Test Reports: Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics.

## 1.4 WARRANTY:

A. Project Warranty: Refer to "Conditions of the Contract" for project warranty provisions.

B. Manufacturer's Product Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's warranty for entrance system as follows:

1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project provided however that the Limited Warranty shall begin in no event later than six months from date of shipment by Kawneer. In addition, welded door corner construction shall be supported with a limited lifetime warranty for the life of the door under normal use.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Qualifications:

1. Installer Qualifications: Installer experienced (as determined by contractor) to perform work of this section who has specialized in the installation of work similar to that required for this project and who is acceptable to product manufacturer.

2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during construction, approving acceptable installer and approving application method.

B. Pre-Installation Meetings: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions, and manufacturer's warranty requirements.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead-time requirements to avoid construction delays.

B. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions. Handle storefront material and components to avoid damage. Protect storefront material against

damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after storefront installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Kawneer Company, Inc.

1. Address: Kawneer Company, Inc. or
555 Guthridge Court,
Technology Park/Atlanta,
Norcross, GA 30092
a. Telephone: 770 449 5555
b. Fax: 770 734 1560

2. Proprietary Product(s)/System(s): Kawneer Aluminum Hurricane Resistant Entrances/Framing System.

a. Series: 350 IR Entrances – 3-1/2" vertical stile, 3-1/2" top rail, 10" bottom rail.

b. Series: IR 501 Framing System – 2-1/2" x 5" non-thermal, center glazed, interior structural silicone glazed, screw spline fabrication.

c. Finish/Color: (See 2.6 Finishes)

B. Substitutions:

1. General: Refer to Division 1 Substitutions for procedures and submission requirements.

a. Pre-Contract (Bidding Period) Substitutions: Submit written requests ten (10) days prior to bid date.

2. Substitution Documentation

a. Product Literature and Drawings: Submit product literature and drawings modified to suit specific project requirements and job conditions.

b. Certificates: Submit certificate(s) certifying substitute manufacturer (1) attesting to adherence to specification requirements for entrance system performance criteria, and (2) has been engaged in the design, manufacturer and fabrication of aluminum entrances for a period of not less than ten (10) years. (Company Name)

c. Test Reports: Submit test reports verifying compliance with each test requirement required by the project.

d. Product Sample and Finish: Submit product sample, with specified finish and color.

3. Substitution Acceptance: Acceptance will be in written form, either as an addendum or modification, and documented by a formal change order signed by the Owner and Contractor.

## 2.2 MATERIALS:

A. Aluminum (Entrances and Components):

1. Material Standard: ASTM B 221; 6063-T6 alloy and temper

2. The door stile and rail face dimensions of the 350 IR Entrance doors will be as follows:

| Door | Vertical Stile | Top Rail | Bottom Rail |
|---|---|---|---|
| 350 IR | 3-1/2" | 3-1/2" | 10" |

3. Major portions of the door members to be 0.125" nominal in thickness and glazing molding to be 0.050" thick.

4. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of entrance members are nominal and in compliance with Aluminum Standards and Data, published by The Aluminum Association.

B. Glazing gaskets shall be either EPDM elastomeric extrusions or a thermoplastic elastomer.

C. Structural silicone sealant to be Dow Corning 983 or 995.

## 2.3 HARDWARE:

A. Fasteners: Where exposed, shall be stainless steel.

B. Perimeter Anchors: When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.

C. Standard Entrance Hardware

1. Weather stripping:

a. Meeting stiles on pairs of doors shall be equipped with an adjustable astragal utilizing wool pile with polymeric fin.
b. The door weathering on a single acting offset pivot or butt hung door and frame (single or pairs) shall be Kawneer Sealair® weathering. This is comprised of a thermoplastic elastomer weathering on a tubular shape with a semi-rigid polymeric backing.

2. Sill Sweep Strips: EPDM blade gasket sweep strip in an aluminum extrusion applied to the interior exposed surface of the bottom rail with concealed fasteners. (Necessary to meet specified performance tests.)

3. Threshold: Extruded aluminum, one piece per door opening, with ribbed surface, meeting ADA requirements.

4. Offset Pivots: Kawneer standard top and bottom pivots with one intermediate offset pivot.

5. Butt Hinge: 1-1/2 pair Kawneer standard 4-1/2" x 4" ball bearing hinges.

6. Continuous Geared Hinge: [_____] (tested to +/- 65 psf Uniform Load).
7. Push/Pull: CPN style.

8. Panic Device: Jackson 2086 Concealed Vertical Rod Exit Device or Paneline Concealed Rod Exit Device (tested to +/- 65 psf Uniform Load).

9. Closer: Surface or concealed closer (concealed closer with non-transom and non-sidelite Trifab VG 450 (Center) and 1600 Wall sub-frames only).

10. Security Lock/Dead Lock: MS 1850A lock with 3-point active stile locking and hurricane flushbolts on pairs or MS 1850A lock with 1871 cylinder operated flushbolts.

11. Cylinder(s)/Thumbturn: Kawneer standard.

12. Cylinder Guard: Kawneer standard.

## 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS:

A. Sealants: Refer to Joint Treatment (Sealants) Section.

B. Glass:

1. Entrance Doors: Viracon – HRG-2, 9/16" infil, tinted.

2. IR 501 Framing System: 1-5/16" insulated laminated infill with 0.090 PVB (solutia saflex), tinted.

## 2.5 FABRICATION:

A. Entrance System Fabrication:

1. Door corner construction shall consist of mechanical clip fastening, SIGMA deep penetration plug welds and 1-1/8" long fillet welds inside and outside of all four corners. Exterior glazing stop shall be hook-in type with EPDM glazing gaskets reinforced with non-stretchable cord. Interior glazing stop shall be mechanically fastened to the door member and it shall incorporate a silicone compatible spacer used with silicone sealant.

2. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints hairline in appearance.

3. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for door hardware.

4. Arrange fasteners and attachments to conceal from view.

## 2.6 FINISHES:

A. Shop Finishing:

1. Kawneer Permanodic® AA-M12C22A31, AAMA 611, Architectural Class II Clear Anodic Coating. Color #17 Clear; Standard.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL:

A. Source Quality: Provide aluminum entrances specified herein from a single source.

1. Building Enclosure System: When aluminum entrances are part of a building enclosure system, including storefront framing, windows, curtain wall system and related products, provide building enclosure system products from a single source manufacturer.

B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate aluminum entrances in accordance with entrance manufacturer's prescribed tolerances.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions (which have been previously installed under other sections) are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Verify openings are sized to receive storefront system and sill plate is level in accordance with manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements, fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION:

A. General: Install entrance system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and AAMA storefront and entrance guide specifications manual.

1. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.

2. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.

3. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp and twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances aligning with adjacent work.

4. Set thresholds in bed of mastic and secure.

5. Adjusting: Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation.

B. Related Products Installation Requirements:

1. Sealants (Perimeter): Refer to Section 7 Joint Treatment (Sealants).

2. Glass: Refer to Section 8 Glass and Glazing.

a. Reference: ANSI Z97.1, CPSC 16 CFR 1201 and GANA Glazing Manual.

### 3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING:

A. Protection: Protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect aluminum storefront system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime, acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.

B. Cleaning: Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 087100

FINISH HARDWARE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. All items known commercially as Finish or Door Hardware.

B. Thresholds and Weatherstripping/Door Seals.

### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes the following:

1. Section 08110 – “Steel Doors and Frames”

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. BHMA (Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association) A156 series.

B. DHI (Door and Hardware Institute) A115 series.

C. SDI – 107 – 84 – Hardware on Steel Doors (Reinforcement – Application.)

D. SDI – 109 – 88 – Hardware for Standard Steel Doors & Frames.

E. NFPA – 80 – Fire Doors and Windows.

F. NFPA – 101-2000 - Life Safety Code.

G. ADA-AG – Americans with Disabilities Act - Accessibility Guidelines.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data – Submit two (2) copies of manufacturer’s catalog sheets describing each item of hardware to be supplied.

C. Schedules: Submit six (6) copies of hardware schedules for Architect’s approval. Schedules are to include quantity, type, location, finish and manufacturer of each item of hardware for each opening. Schedule may be horizontal or vertical format. No material is to be ordered until the submittal is approved. After approval, no substitutions will be allowed without the written approval of the Architect.

D. Samples: If requested by the Architect, submit a sample of each hardware item in the design and finish to be used on the project. Samples may be used on the project provided they are undamaged during the submittal process.

E. Templates: Furnish template information to the General Contractor for use by other trades in fabricating related materials.

F. Project Closeout: On completion of the project, furnish one (1) copy of the "as furnished" hardware schedule along with one (1) copy each of the keying schedule, manufacturer's maintenance instructions and any special tools which may be required to maintain or adjust the hardware. In addition, furnish copies of all manufacturer's warranties for the owner's records.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers and model numbers listed in the hardware sets portion of this specification are for the purpose of establishing a standard of quality. Similar products by approved manufacturers that are equal in design, function and quality will be acceptable upon prior approval of the Architect provided the required physical samples and data are submitted in accordance with Section 01015.

B. The hardware supplier shall be a firm specializing in finish hardware. The firm shall have been engaged in this business for a period of not less than five (5) years and shall have in its employ a full time, certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or person of equivalent experience. This person shall be available to the Architect at reasonable times for consultation regarding this project. This supplier shall be a direct, factory authorized distributor for the manufacturer of the materials being furnished.

C. The hardware manufacturer shall be a recognized firm regularly engaged in the manufacture and sale of finished hardware items.

D. If required, the hardware supplier shall furnish certification and documentation that his materials meet all physical and environmental requirements of the project.

E. As near as possible, obtain each type of hardware (hinges, locks, closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.

F. Provide hardware for fire rated openings that complies with the requirements of NFPA 80 and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that have been tested and listed by UL, FM, Warnock-Hersey or other testing organizations acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Products and installation under the work of this Section shall be in compliance with applicable provisions of published U. S. Justice Department Regulations for the "Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990" (ADA; ADA-AG); ANSI A117.1; and the "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards" (UFAS), 1988 Edition; And revisions and amendments thereto.

1. Where this requires any substitution of products specified herein, advise Architect in writing for necessary approvals.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND PROTECTION

A. Refer to Division 1 Sections "Summary of Work" and "Special Conditions" for additional information and requirements regarding transportation, handling and storage of project materials.

B. Package each item individually. Label and clearly identify each package with item nomenclature and door opening. Correlate all making and opening numbers to match the hardware schedule.

C. The General Contractor is to provide a secure, locked storage area for all items delivered to the jobsite.

D. The General Contractor shall inventory all items delivered to the jobsite within forty-eight hours and advise the supplier immediately of any shortages.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. The General Contractor will coordinate the work between this supplier and other related sections such as hollow metal and wood door suppliers to insure proper manufacturer and fabrication of doors to receive the approved hardware.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturers warranties from hardware supplier as follows:

1. Closers: Ten years
2. Exit Devices & Locksets: Three years
3. Locksets: Three Years.
4. All other Hardware: Two years.

B. Warranties shall cover failure due to manufacturing defects or material failure only. They shall not cover abuse, vandalism, improper installation or maintenance. Defective materials are to be replaced at no cost to the owner.

C. The above warranties shall be in addition to, shall be in effect simultaneously with, and shall not alter other project or product warranties or guarantees, nor shall they serve as a limitation to other remedies available to the Owner.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable products and their manufacturers are listed below. Specific information regarding functions, sizes, mounting and types is found in the hardware sets at the end of the section.

1. Hinges:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | TYPE/SERIES |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Stanley | 26D/CL | FBB179/661HD |

2. Exit Devices:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | SERIES/DESIGN |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Stanley | 32D | 2100 Series x 1700 & 4900 Trim |
| b. | Von Duprin | 32D | 98 Series x 697 & 996L Trim |

Note: All exit devices for exterior openings to meet hurricane codes.

3. Locks, Latches and Dummy Trim:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | SERIES/DESIGN |
|---|---|---|---|

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Best | 26D | 93K14D |
| b. | Schlage | 26D | ND Series x IC Core X SPA Trim |

4. Cylinders, Deadlocks & Misc. Locks:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | SERIES/DESIGN |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Best | 26D | 48H |

5. Closers:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | SERIES/DESIGN |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Stanley | | |

6. Push/Pulls/Kickplates:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | TYPE/SERIES |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Rockwood | 32D | 70F/107 x 70C/K1050 |
| b. | Hager | 32D | 30S/33J/190S |
| c. | Ives | 32D | 8200/8300-8/8400 |

7. Bolts/DP Strikes/Misc.:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | TYPE/SERIES |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Rockwood | 26D | 555/570 |
| b. | Hager | 26D | 282D/280X |
| c. | Ives | 26D | FB458/DP2 |

8. Overhead Stops:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | TYPE/SERIES |
|---|---|---|---|
| | NONE | | |

9. Stops and Miscellaneous Items:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | ITEM |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Rockwood | 32D | 408/443 |
| b. | Hager | 32D | 232W/243F |
| c. | Ives | 32D | WS408/FS438 |
| d. | LCN | 689 | SEM7840 |

10. Thresholds and Weatherstripping:

| | MFG'R | FINISH | TYPE/ITEM |
|---|---|---|---|
| a. | Pemko | AL | As Specified |
| b. | Hager | AL | Equal |
| c. | Natl Guard | AL | Equal |

B. Substitutions: Substitutions from the listed manufacturers and products without prior approval of the architect are not permitted. Suppliers desiring to bid products not listed must make written application to the architect no less than seven (7) working days prior to the bid date. Applications must be accompanied by manufacturer's complete literature and/or samples to allow the Architect to make an informed decision. Verbal requests will not be considered. Approval of alternate

manufacturer's products will only be in writing or by addendum to insure an equitable competitive situation for all bidders.

## 2.2 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

A. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units for finish designations indicated.

B. Fasteners: Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation. Do not provide hardware that has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.

C. Furnish stainless steel screws for installation with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat-head screws except as otherwise indicated. Furnish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work as closely as possible including "prepared for paint" surfaces to receive painted finish.

D. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units that are exposed when door is closed except to the extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt heads or nuts are exposed on opposite face unless their use is the only means of adequately securing the hardware or where required on labeled doors. In no case are thru-bolts to be used as a substitute for proper reinforcement of doors or frames.

## 2.3 FINISHES

A. Finishes for all items are as listed in the hardware schedule at the end of this section.

B. Finish designations are as listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18 "American Standards for Materials and Finishes: and are the industry recognized standard commercial finishes.

## 2.4 KEYING

A. Key all cylinders into the existing system or a new MK system as required. Furnish the following:

1. 6 Master Keys per new group.
2. 3 Change Keys per cylinder.
3. Temporary cores for all cylinders

B. Meet with owner's representative to determine exact keying requirements. Ship permanent cores and keys direct from factory to owner.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations and except as otherwise directed by architect.

1. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the DOOR AND HARDWARE INSTITUTE.

2 WDMA Industry Standard I.S. 1.A-97, "Hardware Locations for Wood Flush Doors."

B. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 9 Section "Painting". Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.

C. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.

D. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.

E. Set thresholds in sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealers".

F. Weatherstripping and Seals: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations to the extent installation requirements are not otherwise indicated.

## 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.

B. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper functions and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

C. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware applications.

## 3.3 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

A. Hardware Sets – ***** COORDINATE WITH HARDWARE SCHEUDLE ON DRAWINGS *****

NOTES:
1. Mount all closers inside; away from exterior, lobbies, corridors etc.
2. Furnish 3 silencers, Rockwood 608, for each hollow metal frame and 2 for each double.
3. Determine required voltage for magnetic holders, where required, before ordering (if any).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000

GLASS AND GLAZING
(Impact Resistant Glass)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

.. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers”
.. Section 08110 - “Steel Doors and Frames”
.. Section 08211 - “Flush Wood Doors”
.. Section 08410 - “Aluminum Entrances and Storefront”

### 1.2 SUMMARY:

A. Extent of glass and glazing work is indicated on drawings and schedules.

B. Types of work in this section include glass and glazing for:

1. Hollow metal doors, transoms, and windows.
2. Aluminum doors, transoms, and windows (storefront).
3. Wood Doors.
4. Glazing accessories.

C. General Locations - Glazing Types:

1. Insulating Glass Assemblies shall be used at all exterior openings, except doors.

2. Single Pane Glass shall be used at all other locations, and at doors.

3. Refer to Drawings and Specifications for locations where heat treated/tempered glass, etc., are required.

D. Glass Assemblies - Glass Colors:

1. Typical exterior glass shall be as follows:

a. Exterior Pane: 1/4-inch tinted grey glass, as specified, selected by Architect.
b. Interior Pane: 1/4-inch clear transparent glass, as specified, after bidding.

2. Exterior glass where indicated to be “frosted,” “obscure,” or “etched,” shall be as specified at Paragraph 2.5-C3 “Etched Glass,” which requires smooth sandblasted finish on the exterior side of the inside pane.

E. Single Pane Glass Assemblies - Glass Colors:

1. Typical interior glass and glass at interior and exterior doors shall be as follows:

   a. 1/4-inch clear transparent tempered safety glass, as specified.

2. Glass indicated to be “frosted,” “obscure,” or “etched,” as specified in Paragraph 2.5-C3 “Etched” Glass, which requires smooth sandblasted finish on one side.

   a. Mount etched side of single pane glass facing toward the interior of the building.

## 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION:

A. Provide glass and glazing that has been produced, fabricated and installed to withstand normal thermal movement, wind loading and impact loading (where applicable), without failure including loss or breakage of glass, failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight, deterioration of glass and glazing materials and other defects in the work.

1. Normal thermal movement is defined as that resulting from an ambient temperature range of 120□F (67□C) and from a consequent temperature range within glass and glass framing members of 180□F (100□C), minimum. Modify as required for more extreme conditions.

2. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal due to other causes than breakage which results in intrusion of dirt or moisture, internal condensation or fogging, deterioration of protected internal glass coating, if any, resulting from seal failure, and any other visual evidence of seal failure or performance.

3. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as the development of manufacturing defects including peeling, cracking or other indications of deterioration in metallic or other coating due to normal conditions of use.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s technical data for each glazing material and fabricated glass product required, including installation and maintenance instructions.

B. Samples: Submit, when requested by Architect, for verification purposes, 12-inch square samples of each type of glass indicated except for clear single pane units, and 12-inches long samples of each color required (except black) for each type of sealant or gasket exposed to view. Install sealant or gasket sample between two strips of material representative of adjoining framing system in color.

C. Certificate: Submit certificates from respective manufacturers attesting that glass and glazing materials furnished for project comply with requirements.

1. Separate certification will not be required for glazing materials bearing manufacturer’s permanent labels designating type and thickness of glass, provided labels represent a quality control program involving a recognized certification agency or independent testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer’s warranty for each product for which a warranty is either required by these Specifications or otherwise available from the manufacturer.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. General: All glass shall comply with FS DD-G-451, except where more stringent standard is indicated or required by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. At locations where glass size cannot be supplied as indicated, provide similar glass in better quality and/or greater thickness; Coordinate with glass framing.

2. Furnish each piece of glass with a label indicating type, quality, thickness, etc., and do not remove until after written approval is received from Architect and Owner's representative.

B. Glazing Standards: Comply with recommendations of Flat Glass Marketing Association (FGMA) "Glazing Manual" and "Sealant Manual", and SIGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines", except where more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to those publications for definitions of glass and glazing terms not otherwise defined in this section or other referenced standards.

C. Safety Glazing Standard: Where safety glass is indicated or required by authorities having jurisdiction, provide type of products indicated which comply with ANSI Z97.1 and testing requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201 for Category II materials.

D. Fire Resistance Rated Wire Glass: Provide wire glass products that are identical to those tested per ASTM E 163 (UL 9) and are labeled and listed by UL or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Insulating Glass Certification Program: Provide insulating glass units permanently marked either on spacers or at least one component pane of units with appropriate certification label of the inspecting and testing organization indicated below:

1. Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC).

a. Certification: CBA.

F. Single Source Responsibility for Glass: To ensure consistent quality of appearance and performance, provide materials produced by a single manufacturer or fabricator for each kind and condition of glass indicated and composed of primary glass obtained from a single source for each type and class required.

G. Subcontractor Qualifications: Glazing Subcontractors shall comply with experience requirements for work on this project the same as stated in Section 08410 - "Aluminum Entrances and Storefront."

H. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Provide exterior glazing that passes enhanced-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for 145 miles per hour Wind Zone when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.

1. Large-Missile Test: For all glazing, regardless of height above grade.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Protect glass and glazing materials during delivery, storage and handling to comply with manufacturer's directions and as required to prevent edge damage to glass, and damage to glass and glazing materials from effects of moisture including condensation, of temperature changes, of direct exposure to sun, and from other causes.

1. Where insulating glass units will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, avoid hermetic seal ruptures by complying with insulating glass fabricator's recommendations for venting and sealing.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Environmental Conditions: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by glazing material manufacturer or when joint substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation or other causes.

## 1.8 WARRANTY:

A. General: Warranties shall run concurrently with other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents, and shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have under the Contract Documents or otherwise.

1. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Coated Glass Products: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of each type of coated glass agreeing to furnish F.O.B. point of manufacture, with freight provided to project site, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements and all installation costs and expenses for those coated glass units which develop manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are defined as peeling, cracking, wrinkling, discoloring, staining, or deterioration in metallic, or opacifier coating due to normal conditions and not due to handling or installation or cleaning practices contrary to glass manufacturer's published instructions.

   a. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than 10-years after date of project substantial completion.

2. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Insulating Glass: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of insulating glass agreeing to furnish F.O.B. point of manufacture, with freight provided to project site, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements and all installation costs and expenses for those insulating glass units developing manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are defined as failure of hermetic seal of air space (beyond that due to glass breakage) as evidenced by intrusion of dirt or moisture, internal condensation or fogging, deterioration of protected internal glass coatings, if any, and other visual indications of seal failure or performance; provided the manufacturer's instructions for handling, installing, protecting and maintaining units have been complied with during the warranty period.

   a. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than 10-years after date of substantial completion.

3. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Laminated Glass: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of laminated glass agreeing to furnish F.O.B. point of manufacturer, with freight provided to project site, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements and all installation costs and expenses for those laminated glass units which develop manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are defined as delamination, discoloring, staining, or deterioration in laminated glass units, due to normal project conditions and not due to handling or installation or cleaning practices contrary to glass manufacturer's published instructions.
   a. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than 5-years after date of entire project's substantial completion.

4. Replacements Under Warranties: Glass units replaced under Warranty provisions shall be required to carry the same warranty as original glass and glazing, beginning from the date of replacement completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:

1. Manufacturers of Clear Float Glass:

.. AFG Industries, Inc.
.. Ford Glass Division.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. LOF Glass, Inc.
.. PPG Industries, Inc.
.. Saint-Gobain/Euroglass.

2. Manufacturers of Wire Glass (1/2-inch square mesh pattern):

.. AFG Industries, Inc.
.. Blue Ridge.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. Hordis Brothers, Inc.
.. Pilkington Sales (North American) Limited.

3. Manufacturers of Heat-Treated Glass:

.. AFG Industries, Inc.
.. Cardinal IG.
.. Environmental Glass Products.
.. Falconer Glass Industries.
.. Ford Glass Division.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. Hordis Brothers, Inc.
.. LOF Glass, Inc.
.. PPG Industries, Inc.
.. Saint-Gobain/Euroglass.
.. Spectrum Glass Prod. Div., H. H. Robertson Co.
.. Viracon, Inc.

4. Manufacturers of Coated Glass:

.. Advanced Coating Technology.
.. Cardinal IG.
.. Environmental Glass Products.
.. Falconer Glass Industries.
.. Ford Glass Division.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. Hordis Brothers, Inc.
.. Independent Insulating Glass.
.. Interpane Coatings, Inc.

.. LOF Glass, Inc.
.. PPG Industries, Inc.
.. Saint-Gobain/Euroglass.
.. Spectrum Glass Prod. Div.; H.H. Robertson Co.
.. Viracon, Inc.

5. Manufacturers of Insulating Glass:

.. Advanced Coating Technology.
.. AFG Industries, Inc.
.. Cardinal IG.
.. Environmental Glass Products.
.. Falconer Glass Industries.
.. Ford Glass Division.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. Hordis Brothers, Inc.
.. Independent Insulating Glass.
.. PPG Industries, Inc.
.. Spectrum Glass Prod. Div.; H.H. Robertson Co.
.. Viracon, Inc.

6. Manufacturers of Fire-Rated and Impact Resistant Glass:

.. AFG Industries, Inc.
.. Blue Ridge.
.. Guardian Industries Corp.
.. Hordis Brothers, Inc.
.. Pilkington Sales (North American) Limited.

## 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL:

A. Primary Glass Standard: Provide primary glass which complies with FS DD-G-451 and ASTM C 1036 requirements, including those indicated by reference to type, class, quality, and, if applicable, form, finish, mesh and pattern.

B. Heat-Treated Glass Standard: Provide heat-treated glass which complies with ASTM C 1048 requirements, including those indicated by reference to kind, condition, type, quality, class, and, if applicable, form, finish, and pattern.

C. Sizes: Fabricate glass to sizes required for glazing openings indicated, with edge clearances and tolerances complying with recommendations of glass manufacturer. Provide thicknesses indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as recommended by glass manufacturer for application indicated.

## 2.3 PRIMARY GLASS PRODUCTS:

A. Clear Float Glass: IR 501 Framing System: 1-5/16” insulated laminated infill with 0.090 PVB (solutia saflex), tinted.

B. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistant Glass - General: 9/16-inch minimum, laminated clear transparent glass, heat strengthened or fully tempered glass (as required by glass size and code).

1. 1/4-inch (6-mm) clear transparent outboard pane;
2. 0.100 interlayer of “Saflex HP” by Solutia;

3. 1/4-inch (6-mm) clear transparent inboard pane, and as specified.

C. Refer to requirements for sealed insulating glass units for performance characteristics of assembled units composed of clear transparent glass, relative to visible light transmittance, U-values, shading coefficient and visible reflectance.

D. Wire Glass: Type II (patterned and wired glass, flat), Class 1 (translucent), Quality q8 (glazing); complying with ANSI Z97.1; 1/4-inch thick; of form and mesh pattern indicated below:

1. Polished Wire Glass: Form 1 (wired, polished both sides), Mesh m2 (1/2-inch square).

2. Location: Fire-rated doors, and otherwise as indicated or required.

## 2.4 HEAT-TREATED GLASS PRODUCTS:

A. Manufacturing Process: Manufacture heat-treated glass as follows:

1. By horizontal (roller hearth) process with roll wave distortion parallel with bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Uncoated Clear Heat-Treated Float Glass: Condition A (uncoated surfaces), Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class 1 (clear), Quality q3 (glazing select), kind as indicated below.

1. Type: Fully Tempered.

2. Thickness: 1/4-inch, unless indicated otherwise.

## 2.5 SEALED INSULATING GLASS UNITS:

A. General: All units shall be preassembled consisting of organically sealed panes of glass enclosing a hermetically sealed dehydrated air space and complying with ASTM E 774 for performance classification indicated as well as with other requirements specified for glass characteristics, air space, sealing system, sealant, spacer material, corner design and desiccant.

1. For properties of individual glass panes making up units, refer to product requirements specified elsewhere in this section and in Sections where the materials are provided, applicable to types, classes, kinds and conditions of glass products indicated.

2. Provide heat-treated panes of type and at locations indicated or, if not indicated, provide heat-strengthened panes where recommended by manufacturer for application indicated and tempered where indicated or where safety glass is designated or required.

3. Performance characteristics designated for insulating glass are nominal values based on manufacturer's published test data for units with 1/4-inch thick panes of glass and 1/2-inch thick air space.

a. U-values indicated are expressed in the number of Btu's per hour per square feet per degree F difference.

4. Performance Classification per ASTM E 774: Class A.

a. Thickness of Each Pane: 1/4-inch, unless indicated otherwise.
b. Air Space Thickness: 1/2-inch, unless indicated otherwise.

c. Sealing System: Manufacturer's standard, in compliance with referenced standards.

d. Spacer Material: Aluminum, in compliance with referenced standards, same color as exposed framing where it occurs.

e. Desiccant: Manufacturer's standard; either molecular sieve or silica gel or blend of both. Comply with requirements of referenced standards.

f. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

B. Other Types of Insulated Glass Units: Provide at locations indicated on the Drawings.

1. Tempered Glass: Same as for general use, with interior and exterior glass fully tempered.

2. Etched Glass: Same as for general use except at insulated glass, exterior face of interior glass shall be sandblasted to obscure vision through it, and where indicated for single pane etched glass, the interior face shall be similarly sandblasted.

## 2.6 ELASTOMERIC GLAZING SEALANTS AND PREFORMED GLAZING TAPES:

A. General: Provide products of type indicated and complying with the following requirements:

1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants and tapes of proven compatibility with other materials with which they will come into contact, including glass products, seals of insulating glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of installation and service, as demonstrated by testing and field experience.

2. Suitability: Comply with recommendations of sealant and glass manufacturers for selection of glazing sealants and tapes which have performance characteristics suitable for applications indicated and conditions at time of installation.

3. Elastomeric Sealant Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealant of base polymer indicated which complies with ASTM C 920 requirements, including those for Type, Grade, Class and Uses.

4. Colors: Provide color of exposed sealants indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

5. Asbestos prohibited: Refer to Section 01015 - “Special Conditions,” for requirements.

B. Glazing Sealant: Use only the following materials, or pre-approved substitutes:

1. One-Part Non-Acid-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant: Type S; Grade NS, Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to uses indicated, O; and complying with the following requirements for modules and additional joint movement capability.

a. Low Modules: Tensile strength of 45 psi or less at 100-percent elongation when tested per ASTM D 412 after 14-days at 77□F (20□C) and 50-percent relative humidity.

b. Additional capability, when tested per ASTM C 719 for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement, to withstand the following percentage increase

and decrease of joint width, as measured at time of application, and remain in compliance with other requirements of ASTM C 920.

2. Preformed Butyl-Polyisobutylene Glazing Tape: Provide manufacturer's standard solvent-free butyl-polyisobutylene formulation with a solids content of 100- percent; complying with AAMA A 804.1; in extruded tape form; non-staining and non-migrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; packaged on rolls with a release paper on one side; with or without continuous spacer rod as recommended by manufacturers of tape and glass for application indicated.

C. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. One-Part Non-Acid Curing Low-Modules Silicone Glazing Sealant:

.. "Chem-Calk 1000"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
.. "Dow Corning 790"; Dow Corning Corp.
.. "864"; Pecora Corp.
.. "Omniseal"; Sonneborn Bldg. Prod. Div., Rexnord Chemical Prod., Inc.
.. "Spectrum 1"; Tremco, Inc.

2. Preformed Butyl-Polyisobutylene Glazing Tape Without Spacer Rod:

.. "Chem-Tape 40"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
.. "Extru-Seal"; Pecora Corp.

.. "PTI 303" Glazing Tape; Protective Treatments, Inc.
.. "Tremco 440 Tape"; Tremco Inc.

3. Preformed Butyl-Polyisobutylene Glazing Tape With Spacer Rod:

.. "Chem-Tape 60"; Bostik Construction Products Div.
.. "Shim-Seal"; Pecora Corp.
.. "PTI 303" Shim Tape; Protective Treatments, Inc.
.. "Pre-shimmed Tremco 440 Tape"; Tremco Inc.

## 2.7 GLAZING GASKETS:

A. Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets: Molded or extruded neoprene or EPDM gaskets, complying with ASTM C 864, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.

B. Cellular Elastomeric Preformed Gaskets: Extruded or molded closed cell, integral-skinned neoprene of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II; black.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:

1. Manufacturers of Preformed Gaskets:

.. D. S. Brown Co.
.. Maloney Precision Products Co.
.. Tremco.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS:

A. Compatibility: Provide materials with proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers and Sealers: Type recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Neoprene, EPDM or silicone blocks as required for compatibility with glazing sealants, 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness.

D. Spacers: Neoprene, EPDM or silicone blocks, or continuous extrusions, as required for compatibility with glazing sealant, of size, shape and hardness recommended by glass and sealant manufacturers for application indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Neoprene, EPDM or silicone blocks as required for compatibility with glazing sealant, of size and hardness required to limit lateral movement (side-walking) of glass.

F. Compressible Filler Rods: Closed-cell or waterproof-jacketed rod stock of synthetic rubber or plastic foam, flexible and resilient, with 5-10 psi compression strength for 25- percent deflection.

## 2.9 GLAZING ACCESSORIES:

A. General: Provide accessories in quantities and at locations as indicated on the Drawings, including all components, templates, etc., required for complete and proper installation which is fully compatible with glazing at locations where accessories occur.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Require Glazier to inspect work of glass framing erector for compliance with manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, offsets at corners; for presence and functioning of weep system; for existence of minimum required face or edge clearances; and for effective sealing of joinery. Obtain Glazier's written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of glazing work. Do not allow glazing work to proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION:

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members to receive glass, immediately before glazing. Remove coatings which are not firmly bonded to substrates. Remove lacquer from metal surfaces where elastomeric sealants are indicated for use.

## 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL:

A. Comply with combined current printed recommendations of glass manufacturers, of manufacturers of sealants, gaskets and other glazing materials, except where more stringent requirements are indicated, including those of referenced glazing standards.

B. Glazing channel dimensions as indicated in details are intended to provide for necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by job conditions at time of installation.

C. Protect glass from edge damage during handling and installation; use a rolling block in rotating glass units to prevent damage to glass corners. Do not impact glass with metal framing. Use suction cups to shift glass units within openings; do not raise or drift glass with a pry bar. Rotate glass with flares or bevels along one horizontal edge which would occur in vicinity of setting blocks so that these are located at top of opening. Remove from project and dispose of glass units with edge damage or other imperfections of kind that, when installed, weakens glass and impairs performance and appearance.

D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

E. Clean and trim excess glazing materials from glass, muntins, frames, etc., promptly after installation.

## 3.4 GLAZING:

A. Install setting blocks of proper size in sill rabbet, located one quarter of glass width from each corner, but with edge nearest corner not closer than 6-inches from corner, unless otherwise required. Set blocks in thin course of sealant which is acceptable for heel bead use.

B. Provide spacers inside and out, of correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, for glass sizes larger than 50-united-inches (length plus height), except where gaskets or glazing tapes with continuous spacer rods are used for glazing. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width, except with sealant tape use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

C. Provide edge blocking to comply with requirements of referenced glazing standard, except where otherwise required by glass unit manufacturer.

D. Set units of glass in each series with uniformity of pattern, draw, bow and similar characteristics.

E. Provide compressible filler rods or equivalent back-up material, as recommended by sealant and glass manufacturers, to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel weep systems and from adhering to joints back surface as well as to control depth of sealant for optimum performance, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete “wetting” or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

G. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial “wash” away from glass. Install pressurized tapes and gaskets to protrude slightly out of channel, so as to eliminate dirt and moisture pockets.

H. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage to ensure that gasket will not “walk” out when installation is subjected to movement.

I. Miter cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent pull away at corners; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

J. Provide cut-outs, where required, install glazing accessories at locations indicated.

## 3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING:

A. Protect exterior glass from breakage immediately upon installation by use of crossed streamers attached to framing and held away from glass. Do not apply markers to surfaces of glass. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove immediately by method recommended by glass manufacturer.

C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less often than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkali deposits or staining. When examination reveals presence of these forms of residue, remove by method recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

D. Remove and replace glass which is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded or damaged in other ways during construction period, including natural causes, accidents and vandalism.

E. Wash glass on both faces not more than 4-days prior to date scheduled for inspections intended to establish date of substantial completion in each area of project. Wash glass by method recommended by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 24 23

PORTLAND CEMENT STUCCO

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This section includes materials and installation of exterior stucco wall covering backed with air and water-resistive barrier.

B. This specification is issued as a performance spec.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A. | Section 03 30 00 | Cast-In-Place Concrete |
| B. | Section 04 20 00 | Unit Masonry |
| C. | Section 06 16 00 | Sheathing |
| D. | Section 07 26 00 | Vapor Retarders |
| E. | Section 07 27 00 | Air Barriers |
| F. | Section 07 50 00 | Membrane Roofing |
| G. | Section 07 62 00 | Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim |
| H. | Section 07 92 00 | Joint Sealants |
| I. | Section 08 40 00 | Entrances, Storefronts, and Curtain Walls |
| J. | Section 08 50 00 | Windows |

1.3 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

A. ASTM Standards:

| | |
|---|---|
| A 641 | Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized ) Carbon Steel Wire |
| A 653 | Specification for Sheet Steel Zinc coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Commercial Quality |
| B 69 | Specification for Rolled Zinc |
| C 144 | Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar |
| C 297 | Standard Test Method for Flatwise Tensile Strength of Sandwich Constructions |
| C 578 | Specification for Preformed, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation |
| C 847 | Standard Specification for Metal Lath |
| C 897 | Standard Specification for Aggregate for Job-Mixed Portland Cement-Based Plasters |
| C 926 | Standard Specification for Application of Portland Cement-Based Plaster |
| C 1063 | Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring for Portland Cement Plaster |
| C 1177 | Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum for Use as Sheathing |

| | |
|---|---|
| C 1513 | Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections |
| D 226 | Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing |
| D 1784 | Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds |
| D 4541 | Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers |
| E 84 | Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials |
| E 96 | Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials |
| E 283 | Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen |
| E 330 | Test Method for Structural Performance of Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference |
| E 331 | Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference |
| E 783 | Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors |
| E 2178 | Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials |
| E 2357 | Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies |
| E 2430 | Standard Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (“EPS”) Thermal Insulation Boards For Use in Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (“EIFS”) |
| G 154 | Recommended Practice for Operating Light-and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Fluorescent UV-Condensation Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials |

B. AISI (American Iron and Steel Institute)

| | |
|---|---|
| AISI S200-2007 | North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing-General Provisions |

C. APA Engineered Wood Association

| | |
|---|---|
| PS 1 | Voluntary Product Standard, Structural Plywood |
| PS 2 | Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels |
| E 30 | APA Engineered Wood Construction Guide |

D. ICC (International Code Council)

| | |
|---|---|
| IBC | 2015 and 2018 IBC (International Building Code) |

E. ICC ES (International Code Council Evaluation Service)

| | |
|---|---|
| AC 11 | Acceptance Criteria for Cementitious Exterior Wall Coatings |
| AC 212 | Acceptance Criteria for Water-resistive Coatings used as Water-resistive Barriers over Exterior Sheathing |
| ICC ESR 1233 | StoGuard with Gold Coat, StoGuard with Gold Coat, and StoGuard VaporSeal Water-Resistive Barriers, and StoEnergy Guard |
| ICC ESR 2323 | StoPowerwall and StoPowerwall NExT Stucco Systems |

F. IAPMO (International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials)

| | |
|---|---|
| IAPMO ER 382 | Western 1-Kote Exterior Stucco System |

G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standards

| | |
|---|---|
| NFPA 285 | Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies containing |

Combustible Components Using the Intermediate-Scale, Multistory Test Apparatus

H. South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD)
Rule 1113 (2007) Architectural Coatings

I. Sto Corp. Addendum to Sto Stucco Specifications

J. US EPA (United Stated Environmental Protection Agency)
40 CFR Part 59 (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 Part 59 – National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products)

## 1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural (wind and axial loads)

1. Design for maximum allowable deflection, normal to the plane of the wall of L/360.
2. Design for wind load in conformance with building code requirements.
3. Refer to applicable ICC ESR for wind load limitations that may apply.

B. Moisture Control

1. Prevent the accumulation of water into or behind the stucco, either by condensation or leakage into the wall construction, in the design and detailing of the wall assembly:

*a. Provide corrosion resistant flashing to protect exposed elements and to direct water to the exterior, including, above window and door heads, beneath window and door sills, at floor lines, at roof/wall intersections, decks, abutments of lower walls with higher walls, above projecting features, and at the base of the wall.*

*b. Air Leakage Prevention – prevent excess air leakage in the design and detailing of the wall assembly. Provide continuity between air barrier components in the wall assembly.*

*c. Vapor Diffusion and Condensation – perform a dew point analysis and/or dynamic hygrothermal modeling of the wall assembly to determine the potential for accumulation of moisture in the wall assembly as a result of water vapor diffusion and condensation. Adjust wall assembly components accordingly to minimize the risk of condensation. Avoid the use of vapor retarders on the interior side of the wall in warm, humid climates.*

*d. Provide StoGuard Air and water-resistive barrier over sheathing, concrete and masonry.*

*e. At through wall expansion joints and at joints formed with back-to-back casing beads, back joints with appropriate StoGuard Detail Component. Refer to Sto Guide Details at www.stocorp.com.*

*f. Seal stucco terminations and accessory butt joints with appropriate sealant. Seal all penetrations through the stucco wall assembly with appropriate sealant, or backer rod and sealant, as dictated by joint type.*

C. Grade Condition

1. Do not specify stucco for use below grade or on surfaces subject to continuous or intermittent water immersion or hydrostatic pressure. Provide minimum 4 inch (100 mm) clearance above earth grade, minimum 2 inch (51 mm) clearance above finished grade (pavers/sidewalk). Provide increased clearance in freeze/thaw climate zones.

D. Sloped surfaces, including Foam Trim and Projecting Architectural Features Attached to Stucco.

1. Avoid the use of stucco on build-outs or weather exposed sloped and horizontal surfaces (refer to 2 and 3 below).
2. Build out trim and projecting architectural features from the stucco wall surface with code compliant EPS foam. All foam trim and projecting architectural features must have a minimum 1:2 [27°] slope along their top surface. All foam horizontal reveals must have a minimum 1:2 [27°] slope along their bottom surface. Increase slope for northern climates to prevent accumulation of ice/snow and water on surface. Where trim/feature or bottom surface of reveal projects more than 2 inches (51 mm) from the face of the wall plane, protect the top surface with waterproof base coat. Limit foam thickness to a maximum of 4 inches (102 mm). Periodic inspections and increased maintenance may be required to maintain surface integrity of finishes on weather exposed sloped surfaces. Limit projecting features to easily accessible areas and limit total area to facilitate maintenance and to minimize maintenance burden. Refer to Sto Guide Details at www.stocorp.com
3. Do not use EPS foam on weather exposed projecting ledges, sills, or other projecting features unless supported by framing or other structural support and protected with metal coping or flashing. Refer to Sto Guide Details at www.stocorp.com

E. Joints and Accessories

1. Provide two piece expansion joints in the stucco assembly where building movement is anticipated: at joints in the substrate or supporting construction, where the system is to be installed over dissimilar construction or substrates, at changes in building height, at floor lines, at columns and cantilevered areas.
2. Provide one piece expansion joints every 144 $ft^2$ (13 $m^2$). Cut and wire tie lath to the expansion joint accessory so lath is discontinuous at or beneath the accessory. Do not exceed length to width ratio of 2-1/2:1 in expansion joint layout and do not exceed more than 18 feet (5.5 m) in any direction without an expansion joint. Where casing bead is used back-to-back as the expansion joint, back the joint with StoGuard Transition Membrane.
3. Provide one piece expansion joints at through wall penetrations, for example, above and below doors or windows.
4. Provide minimum 3/8 inch (9 mm) wide joints where the system abuts windows, doors and other through wall penetrations.
5. Provide appropriate accessories at stucco terminations and joints.
6. Avoid the use of channel reveal accessories which can interfere with proper drainage and proper stress relief.
7. Provide appropriate sealant at stucco terminations and at stucco accessory butt joints.
8. Indicate location of joints, accessories and accessory type on architectural drawings.

F. Fire Protection

1. Noncombustible Type Construction: provide full width firestops at floor lines, typically 4 pcf (64 $kg/m^3$) semi-rigid mineral wool, where metal framing runs continuously past floor line and provide minimum ¾ inch (19 mm) uniform stucco thickness.

G. Solid Substrates (concrete and CMU)

1. Provide surface plane tolerance not to exceed ¼ inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3.0 m).
2. Concrete Masonry – provide open texture concrete masonry units with flush joints.
3. Do not install air and water-resistive barrier materials over efflorescence, weak surface conditions, painted, coated, non-absorbent, salt-contaminated, or any concrete or CMU substrate where adhesion is in question. Proof test adhesion to prepared poured-in-place

or pre-cast concrete surfaces and impose a regimen of quality control tests to verify adhesion throughout the project.

H. Stucco Thickness (does not include primer or textured finish coat)

1. Application to Metal Plaster Bases: stucco thickness shall be uniform ¾ inch or 7/8 inch (19 or 22 mm). Stucco thickness shall not exceed 7/8 inch (22 mm).
2. Stucco shall be applied in 2 coats, scratch and brown coat, to achieve the prescribed thickness.
3. Thickness shall be uniform throughout the wall area.

## 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier

1. Compliant with ICC ES Acceptance Criteria AC 212 (ICC ESR 1233)
2. Material Air Leakage Resistance, ASTM E 2178: less than 0.02 L/s·m$^2$ at 75 Pa (0.004 cfm/ft$^2$ at 1.57 psf)
3. Assembly Air Leakage Resistance, ASTM E 2357: less than 0.2 L/s·m$^2$ (0.04 cfm/ft$^2$ at 1.57 psf)
4. Water Vapor Permeance, ASTM E 96, Method B: greater than 10 perms [573 ng/(Pa·s·m$^2$)]
5. Surface Burning, ASTM E 84: Flame Spread less than 25, Smoke Developed less than 450, Class A Building Material
6. Tensile Adhesion, ASTM C 297: greater than or equal to 15 psi (103 kPa)
7. VOC, calculation:
   a. *Less than 50 g/L*
   b. *Compliant with US EPA 40 CFR 59 for waterproofing/sealer*
   c. *Compliant with South Coast AQMD Rule 1113 for Building Envelope Coating*

B. Stucco Base *(select one)*

1. Stucco scratch and brown coat material in compliance with ASTM C926 and manufactured or listed by Sto Corp. (see Addendum)
2. One coat stucco material in compliance with ICC AC 11, listed by ICC ES, as manufactured or listed b Sto Corp. (see Addendum)

C. Primers *(select one)*

1. Acrylic-based primer for 28 day old stucco surfaces or pH less than 10
   a. *Surface Burning, ASTM E 84: Flame Spread less than 25, Smoke Developed less than 450, Class A building material*
   b. *VOC: less than 50 g/L, compliant with South Coast AQMD Rule 1113 for architectural coatings - primers and sealers*
2. Alkaline resistant primer for freshly placed (minimum 4 day old) stucco surfaces:
   a. *Resistant to alkaline surfaces with pH of 13 or less*
   b. *Surface Burning, ASTM E 84: Flame Spread less than 25, Smoke Developed less than 450, Class A building material*

c. *VOC: less than 50 g/L, compliant with South Coast AQMD Rule 1113 for architectural coatings - primers and sealers*

D. Finishes

1. Flexible Acrylic Finish (Sto Powerwall)

a. *Accelerated Weathering, ASTM G154: 2000 hours, no blistering, checking cracking, crazing, or other deleterious effects*

b. *Water Vapor Permeability, ASTM E96, Method B: > 15 perms [(861 ng/(Pa·s·$m^2$)]*

c. *Surface Burning, ASTM E84: Flame Spread less than 25, Smoke Developed less than 450, Class A building material*

d. *VOC: less than 50 g/L, compliant with South Coast AQMD Rule 1113 for architectural coatings*

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's specifications, details, installation instructions and product data

B. Manufacturer’s code compliance report for air barrier and water-resistive barrier

C. Manufacturer’s code compliance report for stucco where ICC listed one coat stucco is used

D. EPS board manufacturer's certificate of compliance with ASTM E 2430-05

E. Manufacturer’s NFPA 285 assembly report or ICC ESR indicating compliance of air and water-resistive barrier with requirements of NFPA 285 for use on Types I, II, III, and IV construction

F. Manufacturer's standard warranty

G. Samples for approval as directed by architect or owner

H. Fastener manufacturer’s pull-out or withdrawal capacity testing for frame and solid substrates

I. Prepare and submit project-specific details (when required by contract documents)

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer requirements

1. Stucco and air barrier products manufacturer for a minimum of twenty (20) years.

2. Stucco finish products and air barrier products manufactured under ISO 9001 Quality System and 14001 Environmental Management System.

B. Contractor requirements

1. Licensed, insured and engaged in application of portland cement stucco for a minimum of three (3) years.

2. Knowledgeable in the proper use and handling of Sto materials.

3. Employ skilled mechanics who are experienced and knowledgeable in portland cement stucco application, and familiar with the requirements of the specified work.

4. Successful completion of minimum of three (3) projects of similar size and complexity to the specified project.

5. Provide the proper equipment, manpower and supervision on the job site to install the system in compliance with Sto's published specifications and details and the project plans and specifications.

C. EPS foam trim board requirements

1. Listed by an approved agency. Label foam trim board with information required by the applicable building code.

D. Testing

1. Construct full-scale mock-up of typical stucco/window wall assembly with specified tools and materials and test air and water infiltration and structural performance in accordance with ASTM E283, ASTM E331 and ASTM E330, respectively, through independent laboratory. Mock-up shall comply with requirements of project specifications. Where mock-up is tested at job site maintain approved mock-up at site as reference standard. If tested off-site accurately record construction detailing and sequencing of approved mock-up for replication during construction.
2. Conduct air barrier adhesion testing in accordance with ASTM D4541.
3. Conduct air barrier assembly testing in accordance with ASTM E783.
4. Conduct pull-out or withdrawal capacity testing of proposed fasteners for lath attachment into concrete or masonry and verify adequacy with respect to negative design wind pressure. Conduct sufficient tests such that reliable and predictable pull-out values are obtained. Verify adequacy of pull-out or withdrawal capacity of fasteners used for frame construction with manufacturer in relation to negative design wind pressures.
5. Conduct pH testing to check stucco surface alkalinity before application of primer or finish materials. Where alkaline resistant primer is used pH testing may be waived.
6. Conduct wet sealant adhesion testing in accordance with sealant manufacturer’s field quality control test procedure.
7. Notify design professional minimum 7 days prior to testing.

E. Inspections

1. Provide independent third party inspection where required by code or contract documents.
2. Conduct inspections in accordance with code requirements and contract documents.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver all materials in their original sealed containers bearing manufacturer's name and identification of product.

B. Protect EPS foam trim from prolonged UV exposure, keep away from sources of heat, sparks, flame, flammable or volatile materials. Store on a clean, flat surface, off the ground in a dry area.

C. Protect coatings (pail products) from freezing and temperatures in excess of 90°F (32° C). Store away from direct sunlight.

D. Protect portland cement-based materials (bag products) from moisture and humidity. Store under cover off the ground in a dry location.

E. Handle all products as directed on labeling.

1.9 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

*(Weather conditions affect application, drying time and curing requirements. Hot or dry conditions limit working time and accelerate drying and may require adjustments in application, scheduling and curing to achieve desired results; cool or damp conditions extend working time and retard drying and may require added measures of protection against wind, dust, dirt, rain and freezing).*

A. Maintain ambient and surface temperatures above 40°F (4°C) during application and for 24 hours after set of stucco, and after application of air and water-resistive barrier and finish materials.

B. Provide supplementary heat for installation in temperatures less than 40°F (4°C) such that material temperatures are maintained as in 1.09A. Prevent concentration of heat on uncured stucco and vent fumes and other products of combustion to the outside to prevent contact with stucco.

C. Prevent uneven or excessive evaporation of moisture from stucco during hot, dry or windy weather. For installation under any of these conditions provide special measures to properly moist cure the stucco. Do not install stucco if ambient temperatures are expected to rise above 100$^{O}$F (38$^{O}$C) within a 24-hour period.

D. Provide protection of surrounding areas and adjacent surfaces from application of materials.

1.10 COORDINATION/SCHEDULING

*(The work in this section requires close coordination with related sections and trades. Sequence work to provide protection of construction materials from weather deterioration and from damage from trades)*

A. Protect sheathing from climatic conditions to prevent weather damage until the installation of the air and water-resistive barrier.

B. Install diverter flashings wherever water can enter the wall assembly to direct water to the exterior.

C. Coordinate installation of foundation waterproofing, roofing membrane, windows, doors and other wall penetrations to provide a continuous air barrier and continuous moisture protection. Provide protection of rough openings before installing windows, doors, and other penetrations through the wall and provide sill flashing. Coordinate installation of air and water-resistive barrier components with window and door installation to provide weather proofing of the structure and to prevent moisture infiltration and excess air infiltration.

D. Install window and door head flashing immediately after windows and doors are installed.

E. Protect air and water-resistive barrier barrier with stucco cladding within 180 days of installation.

F. Protect paper or felt water-resistive barrier with stucco cladding within 30 days of installation.

G. Commence the stucco installation after completion of all floor, roof construction and other construction that imposes dead loads on the walls to prevent excessive deflection (and potential cracking) of the stucco.

H. Sequence interior work such as drywall installation prior to stucco installation to prevent stud distortion (and potential cracking) of the stucco.

I. Provide site grading such that the stucco terminates above earth grade minimum 4 inches (100 mm) and above finished grade (pavers/sidewalk) minimum 2 inches (51 mm). Provide increased clearance in freeze/thaw climate zones.

J. Install copings and sealant immediately after installation of the stucco and when finish coatings are dry.

K. Attach penetrations through stucco to structural support and provide air tight and water tight seals at penetrations.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard warranty.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Air and water-resistive barrier, Portland Cement Stucco, Stucco Primers, and Stucco Finishes
   1. Sto Corp., 3800 Camp Creek Parkway, Building 1400, Suite 120. Atlanta, GA 30331

## 2.2 AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

A. StoGuard -- fluid applied air and water-resistive barrier for sheathing, concrete, and concrete masonry substrates consisting of multiple compatible components:

   1. Sto Gold Fill -- ready mixed acrylic based flexible joint treatment for rough opening protection, joint treatment of wall sheathing, CMU crack repair, and detail component for shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar ship lap details.

   2. Sto Gold Coat® – ready mixed vapor permeable air and water-resistive barrier coating for wall sheathing, concrete and CMU wall surfaces

   3. Sto AirSeal® - ready mixed vapor permeable high elongation air and water-resistive barrier coating for wall sheathing, concrete and CMU wall surfaces

   4. StoGuard Mesh-- nominal 4.2 oz/yd$^2$ (142 g/m$^2$), self-adhesive, flexible, symmetrical, interlaced glass fiber mesh, with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials, used with Sto Gold Fill to reinforce rough openings, inside and outside corners, sheathing joints, and detail component for shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar shingle lap details

   5. StoGuard Fabric – nonwoven cloth reinforcement used with Sto air and water-resistive barrier coatings for rough opening protection, joint treatment of wall sheathing, and detail component for shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar shingle lap details

   6. StoGuard RediCorner – a preformed fabric piece used in the corners of rough openings in tandem with StoGuard Fabric for quicker installation

   7. StoGuard Tape – self adhering rubberized asphalt tape for rough opening protection in wood or metal frame construction

   8. StoGuard Primer – primer for use with StoGuard Tape

   9. StoGuard Transition Membrane – flexible air barrier membrane for continuity at static transitions: sheathing to foundation, dissimilar materials (CMU to frame wall), wall to

balcony floor slab or ceiling, flashing shingle lap transitions. Also used for dynamic joints: floor line deflection joints, masonry control joints, and through wall joints in masonry or frame construction.

10. Sto RapidGuard® - one component STPE rapid drying gun-applied treatment for sheathing joints, rough openings, seams, cracks, penetrations and other static transitions in above grade wall construction such as: shingle lap over flashing, wall to balcony floor slab or ceiling, and through wall penetrations – pipes, electrical boxes, and scupper penetrations

## 2.3 SHEET WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

*(supplied by others)*

A. Minimum No. 15 asphalt saturated felt complying with ASTM D226, Type 1, or one layer of Grade D kraft building paper, or paper-backed stucco lath conforming to 2.4.

## 2.4 LATH

*(supplied by others)*

A. Minimum 2.5 lb./yd$^2$ (1.4 kg/m$^2$) self-furred galvanized steel diamond mesh metal lath in compliance with ASTM C847

*NOTE: Metal lath is susceptible to corrosion in coastal environments. Provide weather protection to prevent moisture entry into wall construction as outlined in Design Requirements Section 1.4B. Consider the use of stainless steel lath for coastal environments. Exercise care when attaching metal lath and accessories through the water-resistive barrier so that fasteners go into [not between] framing supports. Do not use power, powder-actuated or other fastening tools/methods that can damage the air barrier, water-resistive barrier, or substrate.*

## 2.5 MECHANICAL FASTENERS

*(supplied by others)*

A. Non-corroding fasteners in compliance with AISI S200 – 2007 and ASTM C1513

1. Wood Framing--minimum 11 gauge, 7/16 inch (11 mm) diameter head galvanized roofing nails with minimum ¾ inch (19mm) penetration into studs or minimum #8 Type S wafer head fully threaded corrosion resistant screws with minimum ¾ inch (19 mm) penetration into studs.
2. Steel Framing – minimum #8 Type S or S-12 wafer head fully threaded corrosion resistant screws with minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) and three thread penetration into studs.
3. Concrete or Masonry – minimum # 8 wafer head fully threaded corrosion resistant screws for masonry with minimum 1 inch (25 mm) penetration into substrate.

*NOTE: Pull-out or withdrawal capacity of the selected fastener must be verified with respect to anticipated wind load, desired safety factor and building code requirements. Consult applicable code compliance report for specific assemblies and fastening schedules or conduct project specific testing to verify compliance with design wind pressure requirements.*

B. Tie Wire – 18 gauge galvanized and annealed low-carbon steel in compliance with ASTM A641 with Class I coating.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

*(supplied by others)*

A. Weep screed, casing bead, corner bead, corner lath, expansion and control joint accessories. All accessories shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1063 and its referenced documents

1. REFERENCE DRAWINGS
2. PVC plastic in compliance with ASTM D1784, cell classification 13244C.
3. Zinc in compliance with ASTM B69.
4. Galvanized metal in compliance with ASTM A653 with G60 coating.

B. All accessories shall have perforated or expanded flanges and shall be designed with grounds for the specified thickness of stucco.

*NOTE: Metal accessories are susceptible to corrosion in coastal environments. Consider the use of zinc alloy or PVC accessories in these environments. Metal corner beads with solid metal noses are susceptible to corrosion in exposed exterior applications. Consider the use of several layers of woven-wire mesh or other corner accessories in lieu of corner bead and completely encase the metal in stucco. Care must be taken when attaching metal lath or other wall assembly components so that fasteners go into [not between] framing supports. Powder actuated or other fastening devices that can damage the water-resistive barrier or sheathing should be avoided. CAUTION: AVOID THE USE OF CHANNEL REVEAL ACCESSORIES THAT INTERFERE WITH PROPER DRAINAGE AND STRESS RELIEF.*

## 2.7 JOB MIXED INGREDIENTS

*(supplied by others)*

A. Water: clean and potable.

B. Sand: in compliance with ASTM C897 or ASTM C144, for use with one coat and ASTM C926 stucco concentrates

## 2.8 STUCCO

*(refer to Addendum for other stucco products that may apply)*

A. 102 StoPowerwall Stucco Pre-Blended: fiber reinforced one coat portland cement stucco pre-blended with graded sand, and in compliance with ICC AC 11. See ICC ESR 2323.

B. 103 StoPowerwall Stucco: fiber reinforced one coat portland cement stucco concentrate in compliance with ICC AC 11. See ICC ESR 2323.

C. 108 Powerwall Scratch and Brown: portland cement-based stucco concentrate in compliance with ASTM C926.

D. Other code compliant portland cement stucco as listed by Sto Corp. (refer to Addendum)

## 2.9 FOAM TRIM AND BUILD-OUTS

A. Adhesive and Base Coat

1. Sto BTS Plus – one component polymer modified cement-based high build base coat material

B. Foam Insulation Board for Trim

1. Sto EPS Insulation Board--nominal 1.0 lb/ft$^3$ (16 kg/m$^3$) Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board in compliance with ASTM C578 Type I requirements, and ASTM E2430 *(Note: minimum required thickness is 1 inch [25 mm] and maximum allowable thickness is typically 4 inches [102 mm] for noncombustible type construction and fire-resistance rated wall construction unless thicker dimensions are approved by the code official).*

C. Reinforcing Mesh

1. Sto Mesh--nominal 4.5 oz./yd2 (153 g/m2), symmetrical, interlaced open-weave glass fiber mesh treated with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials (achieves Standard Impact Classification over foam insulation board).
2. Sto Detail Mesh--nominal 4.2 oz/yd$^2$ (143 g/m$^2$), flexible, symmetrical, interlaced open-weave glass fiber fabric treated with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials *(used for standard foam backwrapping and aesthetic detailing).*

## 2.10 CRACK DEFENSE

A. Base Coat

1. Sto BTS Plus – one component polymer modified cement-based high build base coat material

B. Reinforcing Mesh

1. Sto Mesh – nominal 4.5 oz./yd$^2$ (153 g/m$^2$), symmetrical, interlaced open-weave glass fiber mesh made with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials

## 2.11 PRIMER

*(select one)*

A. StoPrime Hot – acrylic based primer/sealer for freshly placed (minimum 4 day old) and high pH stucco surfaces.

*NOTE: Priming is recommended to provide uniform substrate absorption and finish color, to improve adhesion and water resistance. StoPrime Hot may be applied 48 hours after moist curing the brown coat. Other Sto primers require 28 days curing of brown coat or pH less than 10 before application.*

## 2.12 FINISH

A. Stolit Lotusan Finish – integrally colored, factory blended textured Lotus-Effect Technology wall finish with graded marble aggregate

2.13 MIXING

A. StoGuard

1. Sto Gold Fill – mix with a clean, rust-free electric drill and paddle to a uniform consistency. Do not thin or dilute with water.

2. Sto AirSeal -- mix with a clean, rust-free electric drill and paddle to a uniform consistency. Do not thin or dilute with water.

3. Sto Gold Coat – mix with a clean, rust-free electric drill and paddle to a uniform consistency. Do not thin or dilute with water.

B. StoPowerwall Stucco

1. Refer to mix instructions on packaging. USE ONLY THE AMOUNT OF WATER NECESSARY FOR A WORKABLE MIX. Use of excess water is detrimental to performance.

C. Adhesive and Base Coats for Sto Crack Defense and EPS Foam Build-outs:

1. Refer to applicable Sto Product Bulletin for selected adhesive/base coat material(s).

D. Primer--mix with a clean, rust-free high speed mixer to a uniform consistency.

E. Finish--mix with a clean, rust-free high speed mixer to a uniform consistency. A small amount of water (up to 12 ounces [0.4 L]) may be added to adjust workability. Limit addition of water to amount needed to achieve the finish texture.

F. Mix only as much material as can readily be used.

G. Do not add lime, anti-freeze compounds, or other additives to any of the materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ACCEPTABLE INSTALLERS

A. Pre-qualify under Quality Assurance requirements of this specification (section 1.7.B).

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Inspect surfaces for:

B. Contamination – algae, chalkiness, dirt, dust, efflorescence, form oil, fungus, grease, laitance, mildew or other foreign substances.

C. Surface absorption and chalkiness.

D. Crack – measure crack width and record location of cracks.

E. Damage and deterioration.

F. Moisture damage – record any areas of moisture damage.

G. Inspect sheathing application for compliance with applicable requirement:

H. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Sheathing in compliance with ASTM C1177 – refer to manufacturer's instructions and/or ICC evaluation report

I. Exterior Grade and Exposure 1 wood based sheathing – APA Engineered Wood Association E 30.

*NOTE: Sheathing attachment can determine ultimate wind load resistance. Verify attachment in conformance with design wind pressure requirements as determined by building code requirements and/or project specific testing. Wood-based sheathing must be gapped 1/8 inch (3mm) at edge and end joints to prevent cracking in the stucco.*

J. Report deviations from the requirements of project specifications or other conditions that might adversely affect the air and water-resistive barrier or stucco installation to the General Contractor. Do not proceed with air and water-resistive barrier or stucco installation until deviations are corrected.

## 3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Concrete and Concrete Masonry (CMU)

1. Remove surface contamination such as oil, grease, dust, dirt, algae, mildew, salts, paint or coatings. Correct weak surface conditions such as laitance. Use chemical cleaners such as TSP (trisodium phosphate) detergent to remove oil and grease and rinse with potable water. Use chemical cleaners to remove efllorescence or other surface contamination in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Use mechanical methods such as waterblasting, sandblasting, and wire brushing to remove weak surface conditions.
2. Repair cracks up to 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide by raking with a sharp tool to remove loose, friable material and blow clean with oil-free compressed air. Apply joint treatment material over crack, embed reinforcement (where applicable), and smooth joint treatment material with a trowel, drywall or putty knife to cover the reinforcement.
3. Remove projecting fins, ridges, and mortar by mechanical means.
4. Fill honeycombs, aggregate pockets, holes and other voids with Sto patching material.
5. Where the surface is excessively "rough" or out of plane, skim coat the wall surface with Sto base coat material to provide a smooth, level surface.

B. Sheathing

1. Remove surface contaminants and replace damaged sheathing.
2. All sheathing must be handled and installed in compliance with applicable building code and/or manufacturer requirements. Installed sheathing must be clean, dry and free from damage, frost, and all bond-inhibiting materials. Abut gypsum sheathing joints. Gap wood sheathing 1/8 inch (3 mm) at joints. Should gaps exceed 1/8 inch (3 mm) up to 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide, use Sto RapidGuard to fill joints, or apply low expanding urethane foam into joints and rasp or shave flush with sheathing surface in preparation for installation of StoGuard joint treatment.
3. Spot surface defects in sheathing with joint treatment (Sto Gold Fill, Sto RapidGuard, or Sto Gold Coat).

## 3.4 AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

*(refer to Sto Guide Details as needed)*

*NOTE: The air and water-resistive barrier installation described below is one component of the air barrier assembly for the building envelope and the moisture protection of the wall construction. Installation of the air and*

*water-resistive barrier must be integrated with other air and water-resistive barrier components in the construction. This requires coordination with other trades to ensure proper sequencing of work, to achieve air barrier continuity, and to direct rain water to the exterior, not into the wall assembly. Always protect rough openings in wall construction BEFORE installing windows, doors, louvers, etc. Where water is likely to penetrate the wall assembly, such as windows, flashing must be installed to direct water to the exterior at the leak source.*

A. The following instructions are applicable to:

1. Exterior or Exposure I Plywood in compliance with PS-1
2. OSB (Oriented Strand Board) in compliance with PS-1 or PS-2
3. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Sheathing in compliance with ASTM C1177
4. Concrete and Concrete Masonry surfaces

B. Transition Detailing

1. Detail transition areas with Sto RapidGuard (static joints and seams) or StoGuard Transition Membrane (dynamic joints and seams) to achieve air barrier continuity. For illustrations of installation, refer to Sto Guide Details (www.stocorp.com).

C. Rough Opening Protection *(select 1, 2, 3 for frame construction; for concrete or concrete masonry rough openings with wood bucks and similar openings with complex 3-dimensional geometry, select no. 3, Sto RapidGuard):*

1. Sto Gold Fill with StoGuard Mesh: apply 9 inch (229 mm) wide StoGuard Mesh at rough openings. Immediately apply Sto Gold Fill by spray or trowel over the mesh and spread with a trowel to create a smooth surface that completely covers the mesh (refer to Sto Detail 20.20M).
2. Sto Gold Coat or Sto AirSeal with StoGuard Fabric: apply coating liberally by spray or roller to corners of openings, immediately place StoGuard RediCorners in the wet coating, and apply additional coating over the RediCorners to completely embed them. After all corners have been completed apply coating liberally to the entire rough opening, immediately place StoGuard Fabric in the wet coating, smooth any wrinkles with a brush or roller, and apply additional coating over the fabric to completely embed it. Overlap all seams minimum 2 inches (51 mm). Once completed top coat with additional coating as needed to completely seal the surface. Allow to dry and inspect for pinholes or voids. If pinholes or voids are present, seal with additional coating or Sto RapidGuard.
3. Sto RapidGuard: apply a fillet bead of material with a caulking gun at interior corners inside the opening to seal jamb/sill and jamb/head seams. Apply material in a zig-zag pattern along sill, jambs, and head to form a generous bead of material along the surface to be covered. Use a 6 inch (152 mm) wide plastic drywall knife to spread the material to a uniform thickness of 12-20 mils (0.3-0.5 mm) before the material skins. Treat the entire rough opening surface in this manner and overlap onto the face of the sheathing 2 inches (51 mm) minimum all the way around

D. Sheathing Joint Treatment *(select one)*

1. Sto Gold Fill with StoGuard Mesh: place 4 inch (102 mm) wide mesh centered along sheathing joints and minimum 9 inch (229 mm) wide mesh centered and folded at inside and outside corners. Immediately apply Sto Gold Fill by spray or trowel and spread with a trowel to create a smooth surface that completely covers the mesh.
2. Sto AirSeal or Sto Gold Coat with StoGuard Fabric: apply coating liberally by spray or roller along sheathing joints and immediately place 4 inch (102 mm) wide fabric centered over

the joints into the wet coating, and 6 inch (152 mm) wide fabric centered and folded at inside and outside corners into the wet coating. Smooth any wrinkles with a brush or roller and apply additional coating to completely embed the fabric. Overlap seams minimum 2 inches (51 mm).

3. Sto RapidGuard: apply to properly installed sheathing - joints butted for gypsum sheathing, and joints gapped for plywood and OSB sheathings (wood-based sheathing typically requires 1/8 inch [3 mm] spacing at edge and end joints). Apply a thick bead of Sto RapidGuard with a caulking gun along sheathing joints, or apply in a zig-zag pattern across and down the joints. Spread to a uniform thickness of 20-30 mils (0.5-0.6 mm) before the material skins. Spread 1 inch (25 mm) beyond the sheathing joint on each side. Follow the same procedure for inside and outside corners.

E. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier Coating Installation

1. Plywood and Gypsum Sheathing: apply waterproof coating by spray or roller over sheathing surface, including the dry joint treatment, rough opening protection, and transition areas, to a uniform thickness of 10-12 wet mils in one coat (Sto Gold Coat) or 50 wet mils in one coat (Sto AirSeal). Use ½ inch (13 mm) nap roller for plywood. Use ¾ inch (19 mm) nap roller for glass mat faced gypsum sheathing. Protect from weather until dry.

2. OSB Sheathing: apply waterproof coating by spray or with a ¾ inch (19 mm) nap roller to sheathing surface to a uniform thickness of 10-12 wet mils (Sto Gold Coat) or 50 wet mils in one coat (Sto AirSeal). Allow to dry, inspect surface for raised wood stands, and touch up these areas with a second coat.

3. CMU Surfaces:

   a. *Repair static cracks up to 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with Sto RapidGuard. Rake the crack with a sharp tool to remove loose or friable material and blow clean with oil-free compressed air. Apply the crack filler with a trowel or putty knife over the crack and tool the surface smooth. (*Note: For moving cracks or cracks larger than ½ inch [13mm]), consult with a structural engineer for repair method). *Protect repair from weather until dry.*

   b. *Liberally apply coating to the surface with a ¾ inch nap roller or spray equipment to a wet thickness of 10-30 mils (Sto Gold Coat) or 50 wet mils (Sto AirSeal), depending on surface condition. Apply to a uniform thickness. Additional coats may be necessary to provide a void and pinhole free surface. Protect from weather until dry.*

*IMPORTANT:* *The Sto coating functions as an air and water-resistive barrier on normal weight concrete masonry wall construction with flush (struck flush with the surface of the CMU) or concave joints when minimum two liberal coats are applied. Additional coats may be necessary depending on the condition of the CMU wall surface, CMU porosity, joint profile, and other variables that may exist. For "rough" CMU wall surfaces, skim coat the entire surface with one of Sto's cementious levelers (Sto BTS Plus or Sto BTS Xtra) before application of coating. A VOID AND PINHOLE FREE SURFACE must be achieved for the coating to properly function as an air and water-resistive barrier on CMU wall surfaces.*

F. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier Connections and Shingle Laps

1. Coordinate installation of connecting air barrier components with other trades to provide a continuous air tight membrane.

2. Coordinate installation of flashing and other moisture protection components with other trades to achieve complete moisture protection such that water is directed to the exterior, not into the wall assembly, and drained to the exterior at sources of leaks (windows, doors and similar penetrations through the wall assembly).

3. Splice-in head flashings above windows, doors, floor lines, roof/sidewall step flashing, and similar locations with StoGuard detail component to achieve shingle lap of the air and water-resistive barrier such that water is directed to the exterior.

*NOTE: Windows and doors are typically installed immediately following installation of the air and water-resistive barrier and work should be sequenced accordingly. Consult with window manufacturer for installation requirements to maintain air barrier continuity and for head, jamb, sill flashing and perimeter sealant requirements needed to prevent leaks into the wall assembly.*

*NOTE: DO NOT ALLOW AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION TO REMAIN EXPOSED MORE THAN 180 DAYS. PROTECT WITH STUCCO WALL COVERING PROMPTLY AFTER INSTALLATION.*

## 3.5 SHEET WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

*(for frame construction with wood or gypsum-based sheathing, not required for concrete or CMU construction)*

A. Install in compliance with the applicable building code requirements for building paper. Lap paper over foundation weep screed attachment flange, floor line flashing, and window/door head flashings. Refer to Sto Guide Details at www.stocorp.com

*NOTE: Code requirements may vary. Always consult the applicable code and the manufacturer's code compliance report. Typically building paper in compliance with the code is attached directly to sheathing and lapped shingle style, upper courses over lower courses, by minimum 2 inches (51 mm), with vertical laps of minimum 6 inches (150 mm). Courses are staggered so that vertical joints do not align. Care must be taken to prevent tears in the paper and to limit penetrations to only those required for attachment. Flashing must be in place and properly integrated with the sheet WRB at sills, above windows and doors, at floor lines, decks and at roof/wall intersections such that water is directed to the exterior.*

## 3.6 STUCCO INSTALLATION

*(refer to Sto Guide Details as needed)*

*General Information: apply the stucco in discrete panels without interruption to avoid cold joints and differences in appearance. Abut wet stucco to set stucco at natural or architectural breaks in the wall such as expansion joints, pilasters, terminations, or changes in plane. Hot or dry conditions accelerate drying and moisture loss from stucco which can diminish strength and resistance to cracking. Under these conditions, adjustments in the application, scheduling and curing of stucco to prevent rapid loss of moisture are necessary to achieve a satisfactory stucco installation. Cold temperatures retard drying and strength gain and adjustments may have to be made in the application, scheduling and curing of stucco to prevent damage from frost and other trades. Do not install stucco during extremely hot, dry and/or windy conditions. Do not install stucco during freezing conditions or on frozen substrates. Do not install stucco onto grounds of accessories. Completely embed lath and flanges of accessories and completely cover fastener attachments with stucco. Moist cure stucco minimum 48 hours for optimum strength gain and resistance to cracking. Allow final stucco application to completely dry (28 days) before applying primer or finish (except in the case of StoPrime Hot which can be applied 48 hours after completing moist cure of stucco). The finished installation must be true, plumb and square. Should stucco get into control or expansion joints, remove the stucco from within the joint before the stucco sets.*

After satisfactory inspection of surfaces and correction of any deviations from specification requirements commence the stucco installation as described below:

A. Installation over StoGuard

1. Weep Screed Installation *(may also be done in conjunction with flashing and air and water-resistive barrier installation to facilitate shingle lapping of components at base of wall)*

*a. Install foundation weep screed at the base of the wall securely to solid substrate or framing with the appropriate fastener. Locate foundation weep screed so that it overlaps the joint between the foundation and framing by a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm). Locate the foundation weep screed nosing minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above earth grade, 2 inches (51 mm) above finished grade (paved surfaces, for example). Lap air and water-resistive barrier, sheet water-resistive barrier, over the weep screed attachment flange.*

2. Casing Bead and Two Piece Expansion Joint Installation

*a. Install casing beads at stucco terminations – doors, windows and other through wall penetrations. Install two piece expansion joints (or back-to-back casing beads) at building expansion joints, thru-wall joints in concrete or CMU, where the stucco is to be installed over dissimilar construction or substrates, at changes in building height, at floor lines, columns, and cantilevered areas. Install full accessory pieces where possible and avoid small pieces. Seal adjoining pieces by embedding ends in sealant. Abut horizontal into vertical joint accessories (except where horizontal movement joints exist that prevent continuous vertical runs of accessories). Attach at no more than 7 inches (178 mm) into solid substrate/framing with appropriate fasteners.*

*NOTE: Refer to architectural drawings for joint locations and accessory type. Air barrier and moisture protection must be continuous behind joints and accessories – refer to Sto Guide Details.*

3. Lath Installation

*a. Diamond Mesh Metal Lath – conform to ASTM C1063*

*i.* General – install metal lath with the long dimension at right angles to structural framing (horizontally on solid substrates). Terminate lath at expansion joints. Do not install continuously at joints.

*ii.* Seams/Overlaps--overlap side seams minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) and end seams minimum 1 inch (25 mm). Stagger end seams. Overlap casing beads and expansion joints minimum 1 inch (25 mm) over narrow wing accessories, minimum 2 inches (51 mm) over expanded flange accessories. Do not install lath continuously beneath expansion joints.

*iii.* Attachment--fasten securely into solid substrates or through sheathing into structural framing at 7 inches (178 mm) on center maximum vertically and 16 inches (406 mm) on center horizontally*. Wire tie at no more than 9 inches (225 mm) on center at: side laps, accessory overlaps, and where end laps occur between supports.

*iv.* Paper-backed lath – follow installation as for diamond mesh metal lath. Lap lath over lath, not paper to lath overlap. For horizontal overlaps the paper backing must lap shingle style behind the lath-to-lath overlap.

**NOTE: The type of fastener selected, its layout and pullout or withdrawal value from the supporting construction must be verified and approved by the project engineer/architect with respect to design wind load and local building code requirements. Exercise care when attaching metal lath and accessories through the water-resistive barrier so that fasteners go*

*into [not between] framing supports. Do not use power, powder-actuated or other fastening tools/methods that can damage the air barrier, water-resistive barrier or substrate.*

4. One Piece Expansion Joint Installation

   a. *Install one piece expansion joints at through wall penetrations, for example, above and below doors and windows. Install one piece expansion joints at every 144 ft$^2$ (13 m$^2$). Wire tie one piece expansion joints to lath at no more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center. Seal adjoining pieces by embedding ends in sealant. Make certain lath is DISCONTINUOUS at or beneath joints.*

5. Inside and Outside Corners

   a. *Install corner lath at inside corners and corner bead at outside corners over lath. Attach through lath into solid substrate or framing at no more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center with appropriate fasteners.*

6. Stucco Installation

   a. *Scratch Coat: apply stucco with sufficient pressure to key into and embed the metal lath. Apply sufficient material, 3/8 or ½ inch (9 or 12 mm), to cover the metal lath and to permit scoring the surface. Score the stucco upon completion of each panel in preparation for a second coat. Score horizontally.*

   b. *Brown Coat: as soon as the first coat is firm enough to receive the second coat without damage, apply the second coat. Alternatively, moist cure the first coat up to 48 hours and dampen the scratched surface with water immediately before applying the second coat. Apply the second coat with sufficient pressure to ensure intimate contact with the first coat and as needed to bring the stucco to a uniform thickness that matches the grounds of the accessories. Use a rod or straight edge to bring the surface to a true, even plane. Fill depressions in plane with stucco. Final thickness of stucco shall be uniform throughout the wall area and shall be either 3/4 inch or 7/8 inch (19 or 22 mm), as required by construction documents, and shall not exceed 7/8 inch (22 mm).*

   c. *After the stucco has become slightly firm float the surface lightly with a darby or wood float to densify the surface and to provide a smooth, even surface. The proper time to float is when the wood float no longer sticks to the surface of the stucco.*

   d. *Moist cure after the stucco has set by lightly fogging for at least 48 hours. Fog as frequently as required during the 48-hour period to prevent loss of moisture from the stucco. Avoid eroding the stucco surface with excess moisture. If relative humidity exceeds 75% the frequency of moist curing can be diminished.*

B. EPS Foam Trim and Build-Outs

1. Where foam build-outs terminate at a dissimilar material such as a window, door or other non-stucco surface, backwrap the foam build-out by installing detail mesh onto the terminating edge of the stucco. Embed the mesh in the foam adhesive. Allow the mesh to dangle until the backwrapping procedure is completed (B4).

2. Install foam build-outs directly over hardened stucco with foam trim adhesive. Apply adhesive with the appropriate size notched trowel to the back of the insulation board and immediately place build-out in the proper location on the wall. Press firmly into place and trim or tool excess adhesive from ends and edges of foam trim for a smooth void-free connection to the stucco substrate.

3. After the adhesive has cured sufficiently to hold the build-out firmly in place, rasp the entire foam surface smooth.

4. Complete the backwrapping procedure by applying the foam trim base coat to the exposed edges of the foam build-out and minimum 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) onto the face. Pull the

backwrap mesh around the foam build-out and fully embed it into the base coat. Use a corner trowel for neat straight corners.

5. Apply the cementious base coat to the foam build-out and approximately 3 inches (76 mm) onto the adjacent stucco surfaces to an approximate thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm). Immediately embed the reinforcing mesh in the wet base coat. Trowel from the center to the edges of the mesh to avoid wrinkles and remove excess base coat. Overlap mesh seams minimum 2-1/2 inches (64 mm). Overlap mesh onto adjacent stucco wall surfaces minimum 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) at terminations of the foam build-out and feather onto the stucco wall surface. Alternatively, If Sto Crack Defense is used apply Sto Crack Defense with its reinforcing mesh continuously from the stucco wall surface over foam build-outs (refer to 3.07 C).

*NOTE: Do not install foam build-outs over joints in the stucco wall assembly. Terminate foam build-outs and backwrap in accordance with instructions above.*

C. Crack Defense

*NOTE: Crack Defense is optional. It provides additional crack resistance to the stucco wall surface.*

1. Apply base coat over the moist cured stucco (and foam build-outs if not already reinforced with mesh) with appropriate spray equipment or a stainless steel trowel to a uniform thickness of approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm). Work horizontally or vertically in strips of 40 inches (1016mm), and immediately embed the mesh into the wet base coat by troweling from the center to the edge of the mesh. Overlap mesh not less than 2-½ inches (64 mm) at mesh seams and at overlaps of detail mesh. Feather seams and edges. Avoid wrinkles in the mesh. The mesh must be fully embedded so that no mesh color shows through the base coat when it is dry. Re-skim with additional base coat if mesh color is visible. Do not install base coat or mesh over joints or accessories in the stucco wall assembly.

D. Primer Installation

1. StoPrime Hot – Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Allow stucco to dry an additional 48 hours, then apply primer evenly with brush, roller or proper spray equipment over the clean, dry stucco and foam build-outs, and allow to dry. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 7 days before application of finish.
2. StoPrime Sand – Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Wait until stucco is 28 days old or the pH level of the surface is below 10 before applying primer. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 28 days before application of finish or pH must be below 10.
3. StoPrime – Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Wait until stucco is 28 days old or the pH level of the surface is below 10 before applying primer. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 28 days before application of finish or pH must be below 10.

E. Textured Finish Installation

1. Apply finish to minimum 28-day old stucco or primed stucco and foam build-outs, or apply when pH of stucco surface is less than 10. If StoPrime Hot is used as the primer the primed stucco/foam build-out surfaces need only be minimum 7 days old. Apply finish by spraying or troweling with a stainless steel trowel, depending on the finish specified. Follow these general rules for application of finish:
   a. *Avoid application in direct sunlight.*
   b. *Apply finish in a continuous application and work a wet edge towards the unfinished wall area. Work to an architectural break in the wall before stopping to avoid cold joints.*

c. *Weather conditions affect application and drying time. Hot or dry conditions limit working time and accelerate drying. Adjustments in the scheduling of work may be required to achieve desired results; cool or damp conditions extend working time and retard drying and may require added measures of protection against wind, dust, dirt, rain and freezing. Adjust work schedule and provide protection.*

d. *Float "R" (rilled or swirl texture) finishes with a plastic float to achieve their rilled texture*

e. *Do not install separate batches of finish side-by-side.*

f. *Do not apply finish into or over sealant joints. Apply finish to outside face of wall only.*

g. *Do not apply finish over irregular or unprepared surfaces or surfaces not in compliance with the requirements of the project specifications.*

h. *Do not install finish over high pH (≥ 10) stucco surfaces or surfaces that have not been fully cured.*

2. Sto Signature or Specialty Finish Installation

   a. *Refer to applicable Installation Guide and/or Product Bulletin for selected finish.*

3. StoCast Finish Installation

   a. *Refer to applicable Application Guide and/or Product Bulletin for selected finish.*

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Provide protection of installed materials from water infiltration into or behind them.

B. Provide protection of installed stucco from dust, dirt, precipitation, and freezing.

C. Provide protection of installed primer and finish from dust, dirt, precipitation, freezing and continuous high humidity until fully dry.

D. Provide sealant and backer material at stucco terminations and at fixture penetrations through the stucco to protect against air, water and insect infiltration. Provide weeps at floor lines, window and door heads, and other areas to conduct water to the exterior.

## 3.8 CLEANING, REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE

A. Clean and maintain the stucco finish for a fresh appearance and to prevent water entry into and behind the stucco. Repair cracks, impact damage, spalls or delamination promptly.

B. Maintain adjacent components of construction such as sealants, windows, doors, and flashing, to prevent water entry into the wall assembly.

C. Refer to Sto reStore Repair and Maintenance Guide (reStore Program) for detailed information on stucco restoration – cleaning, repairs, recoating, resurfacing and refinishing, or re-cladding.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092500

GYPSUM DRYWALL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry” (grounds and concealed P.T. blocking)
2. Section 06200 - “Finish Carpentry”
3. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers”
4. Section 09900 - “Painting”

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Work described in this section includes the following types of gypsum board construction:

1. Steel framing members to receive gypsum board.

2. High-impact abuse resistant gypsum board screw-attached to steel framing and furring members, and to wood framing, where indicated.

3. Gypsum sheathing (if any), with air infiltration barrier.

4. Grid type suspension systems for sloped and horizontal ceiling applications of interior gypsum board products which are not attached directly to primary framing systems.

5. Notes:

a. Extend framing and gypsum board up at fire-rated walls to bottom of fire-rated enclosures above (where occurs) or to roof or floor deck, and mud top edges.

b. Extend non-rated walls up to bottom of structure.

c. Extend only that partition framing specifically indicated as not full-height up to finished ceilings and tie-off every 4th stud to structure above.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS:

A. Gypsum Board Construction Terminology: Refer to ASTM C 11 and GA 505 for definitions of terms for gypsum board construction not otherwise defined in this section or other referenced standards.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

1. Current product data and installation instructions from manufacturers for each type of product specified; Six (6) Sets - minimum.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Fire-Resistance Ratings:

1. Where indicated, provide materials and construction which are identical with those of assemblies whose fire resistance rating has been determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Provide fire-resistance rated assemblies identical to those indicated by reference to GA File numbers in GA-600 “Fire Resistance Design Manual” or to design designations in U.L. “Fire Resistance Directory” or in listing of other testing agencies acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain all steel framing and all metal trim, and each type of gypsum board and related joint treatment materials from a single manufacturer.

C. Pre-Construction Conference: Prior to beginning work associated with roof system, the Contractor and appropriate subcontractors shall meet to discuss coordination of the work of the trades associated with the installation of the roof system, suspended acoustical and gypsum board ceiling, suspended mechanical ductwork, suspended light fixtures, etc. This work shall be planned and coordinated to provide hanger attachments needed by the various trades in a manner that will minimize conflict with installation of the roof system.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.

B. Store materials inside, under cover, and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum boards flat to prevent sagging.

C. When materials are moved into the building, distribute pallets and loads evenly around work areas so as to avoid overloading structure, causing damage to any materials, interfering with work of other trades, etc.

D. Handle gypsum boards to prevent damage to edges, ends and surfaces. Do not bend or otherwise damage metal corner beads, trim, etc.

E. Refer to Division 1 Sections “Summary of Work” and “Special Conditions” for additional information and requirements regarding stored materials.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Environmental Requirements, General: Establish and maintain environmental conditions for application and finishing gypsum board to comply with ASTM C 840, with gypsum board manufacturer’s recommendations, and with adhesive manufacturer’s recommendations, for before, during, and after installation.

B. Minimum Room Temperatures: For non-adhesive attachment of gypsum board to framing, maintain not less than 40 deg. F.

C. Ventilate building spaces to remove water not required for drying joint treatment materials. Avoid drafts during dry, hot weather to prevent materials from drying too rapidly.

## 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING:

A. Sequence installation of gypsum board and sheathing with installation of exterior cladding and roofing to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Do not leave gypsum sheathing board exposed to weather after its application for more than one month or, if protected as indicated below, for more than 6 months:

a. Cover exterior surface of sheathing with a temporary air infiltration barrier equivalent to 6-mil polyethylene film. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

b. Remove covering just prior to installation of asphalt felt, face brick, and similarly applied exterior materials.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:

1. Steel Framing and Furring:

a. Bostwick Steel Framing Company
b. Dale Industries, Inc.
c. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
d. Gold Bond Building Products Division, National Gypsum Company
e. Harrison Manufacturing Company
f. Marino Industries Corp.
g. Milcor Division; Inryco, Inc.
h. Unimast Incorporated
i. United States Gypsum Company

2. Grid or Direct Suspension Systems:

a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
b. Chicago Metallic Corp.
c. USG Interiors, Inc.; United States Gypsum Company
d. Worthington Steel Company (formerly National Rolling Mills).

3. Gypsum Board and Related Products:

a. CertainTeed
b. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
c. Gold Bond Building Products Div., National Gypsum Company
d. United States Gypsum Company

4. Extruded Moldings and Reveal Moldings:

a. AMICO
b. Fry Reglet Corporation
c. Gordan, Inc.

d. M&M Systems Corporation

2.2 STEEL FRAMING COMPONENTS FOR SUSPENDED AND FURRED CEILINGS (if any):

A. General: Provide components which comply with ASTM C 754 for materials and sizes, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wires for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.

C. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

D. Steel Studs for Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, with flange edges bent back 90 deg. and doubled over to form 3/16-inch minimum lip (return), minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and minimum depth as follows:

1. Thickness: 20 gauge, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Depth: As indicated.

3. Spacing: As indicated in referenced standard and on drawings, but no less than at all edges and 24-inches o.c.

E. Steel Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, hat-shaped, depth of 7/8-inch, and minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal as follows:

1. Thickness: 20 gauge at interior and 18-gauge at exterior, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Spacing: As indicated in referenced standard and on drawings, but not less than at all edges and 24-inches o.c.

a. At ceilings and soffits indicated to receive more than a single layer of gypsum board, spacing shall be not less than at all edges and 16-inches o.c.

F. Grid Suspension System: ASTM C 645, manufacturer's standard grid suspension system composed of main beams and cross furring members which interlock to form a modular supporting network.

1. Locations for Use: Provide grid type suspension systems for sloped and horizontal ceiling applications of interior gypsum board products which are not attached directly to primary framing system; Minimum 4-feet x 4-feet grid and cross tees at 2-feet o. c., with minimum installation requirements as required by manufacturer's current written instructions, referenced standards, and as indicated in this Section 09250 and Section 09511 - "Acoustical Panel Ceilings". Provide and comply with manufacturer's published requirements for accessories, trim, and hanger wire, and as otherwise required to provide flat ceilings without deflection or sag.

2. Product/Manufacturer: Provide suspended modular grid furring system equivalent to standard drywall suspension system for flat ceilings, with 1-1/2-inch grid faces, and as follows:

a. Equivalent to "Rigid X" system, as manufactured by USG Interiors, or one of the other three above named manufacturers.

2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR WALLS AND PARTITIONS:

A. Steel Studs and Runners:

1. ASTM C 645, with flange edges bent back 90 deg. and doubled over to form 3/16-inch minimum lip (return), and complying with the following requirements for minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal and minimum depth as follows:

2. Metal studs at interior partitions shall be 3-5/8-inches x 20 gauge (362S162-33), 6-inches x 20 gauge (600S162-33), or 8-inches x 18 gauge (800S162-43), at locations indicated on the Drawings, spaced at 16-inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated below, or otherwise shown on drawings or required by project conditions. Stud width shall be 1-5/8-inches unless otherwise indicated.

3. Use double studs or 6-inch studs, as indicated or as otherwise required, for chase walls, piping, conduits, or etc.

4. Metal studs at shaft wall or similar construction shall be type, thickness, depth and configuration indicted, or if not indicated, not less than the studs used in the tested assembly. Minimum thickness of 3-5/8-inch studs shall be 22 gauge, and of 6-inch studs shall be 20 gauge.

5. Special stud tracks for all curved walls shall be equivalent to "Flex-C Trac" galvanized flexible segmented track with slidable side straps, as manufactured by Flex-Ability Concepts, Inc.; Edmond, OK; Phone: (405) 302-0611.

6. Any interior load-bearing studs, if any, shall be at least 6-inches depth x 18 gauge (600S162-43), or 8-inches x 18 gauge (800S162-43), unless otherwise indicated on Drawings - galvanized C-studs spaced at 16-inches o.c.

B. Fasteners: Provide fasteners of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power and other properties required to fasten steel framing and furring members securely to substrates involved; complying with the recommendations of gypsum drywall manufacturers for applications indicated.

C. Continuous Horizontal Bridging / Bracing:

1. 1-1/2-inch cold-rolled channels (galvanized).

2. Spacing: 4'-0" or 4'-6" o.c. vertically, through pre-punched slots in studs.

3. Splice Plates: 16 gauge at all splices.

4. Anchors (bridging channels to studs): 1-1/2-inches x 2-inches x 16 gauge clip angle, 1/4-inch less than stud width, secured with four (4) 5/8-inch S-14 screws. (Anchors required at ends of runs, where snap-in fit to stud slots is not snug or allows stud to move/slide on channels, and at studs on each side of splices in bridging channels).

D. Strap Bracing: 1-1/2-inch x 20-gauge galvanized steel, anchored at ends, splices, and each stud with typical framing screws. Placement at curved walls shall align with radius or curve indicated at each such location.

E. Extruded Moldings and Reveal Moldings: Provide manufacturer's standard alloy 6063-T5 extruded units with 70% resin 2-coat "Kynar 500" baked enamel finish, and as follows:

1. Design: Provide shapes and configurations as indicated on the Drawings.

a. Form reveal moldings to cover at least two sides and rear of reveal.

b. At drywall (or plaster) edge, provide continuous expanded metal edge, designed for mudding-in.

c. At ceiling grid edge, provide continuous edge designed for compatibility with lay-in ceiling grid.

2. Color: To match ceiling grid in same room where occurs, unless indicated otherwise, and color as selected by Architect at any exterior locations.

## 2.4 GYPSUM BOARD:

A. General: Provide gypsum board of types indicated in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end joints.

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 36, and as follows:

1. Type: High-impact abuse resistant; Type X at all locations.
2. Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
3. Thickness: 5/8-inch for general use, except where 1/4-inch layers (at least two layers) may be indicated or required for curved wall or ceiling assemblies.

C. Gypsum Backing Board for Multi-Layer Applications: ASTM C 442 or, where backing board is not available from manufacturer, gypsum wallboard, ASTM C 36, and as follows:

1. Type: High-impact abuse resistant; Type X at all locations.
2. Edges: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Thickness: 5/8-inch.

D. Moisture- and Mold- Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 36, and as follows:

1. Type: Type X, high-impact abuse resistant at all locations; Moisture- and mold- resistant core and facings/surfaces.
2. Edges: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Thickness: 5/8-inch.
4. Locations: At rooms with toilet fixtures and/or service sinks, entire wall behind sinks, and elsewhere only as indicated.
5. Use equivalent to 5/8-inch thick Georgia-Pacific "Dens-Shield" tile backer board with sealed and facing-taped joints, at ceramic and hard tile; ASTM C 1177 or ASTM C 1178.
6. Use "exterior gypsum board" where exposed at any exterior locations; ASTM C 931 or ASTM C 1396.

E. Gypsum Sheathing Board with Water-Resistant Core: Gypsum sheathing board consisting of noncombustible gypsum core incorporating a water-resistant material, surfaced on face, back and long edges with water-repellent surface; complying with ASTM C 1177, and requirements indicated below:

1. Type: Type X at all locations.
2. Edge and End Configuration: Square.
3. Thickness: 5/8-inch, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.
4. Size: 4'-0" x 8'-0" or 9'-0" as required for coordination with framing.
5. Note: Use equivalent to 5/8-inch thick CertainTeed "GlasRoc Sheathing" or Georgia-Pacific "Dens-Glass Gold", with sealed and facing-taped joints at any exterior EIFS systems, stucco systems, and metal siding systems, only where plywood or other wood sheathing is not indicated.

6. Cover ALL SHEATHING with air infiltration barrier.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES:

A. Cornerbead and Edge Trim for Interior Installation: Provide corner beads, edge trim and control joints which comply with ASTM C 1047 and requirements indicated below:

1. Material: Formed metal, plastic, or metal combined with paper, with metal complying with the following requirement.

a. Sheet steel coated with zinc by hot-dip or electrolytic processes, or with aluminum.

2. Edge trim shapes indicated below by reference to designations of Fig. 1 in ASTM C 1047:

a. “LC” Bead, unless otherwise indicated.
b. “L” Bead where indicated or required.
c. “U” Bead where indicated.

3. One-Piece Control Joint: Formed with vee-shaped slot per Fig. 1 in ASTM C 1047, with slot opening covered with removable strip.

## 2.7 GYPSUM BOARD JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS:

A. General: Provide materials complying with ASTM C 475, ASTM C 840, and recommendations of manufacturer of both gypsum board and joint treatment materials for the application indicated.

B. Joint Tape: Paper reinforcing tape.

C. Drying-Type Joint Compounds:

1. Factory-prepackaged vinyl-based products complying with the following requirements for formulation and intended use.

2. Ready-Mix Formulation: Factory-premixed product.

3. Taping compound formulated for embedding tape and for first coat over fasteners and flanges of corner beads and edge trim.

4. Topping compound formulated for fill (second) and finish (third) coats.

5. All-purpose compound for use as both taping and topping compound.

D. Setting-Type Joint Compound:

1. Factory-prepackaged, job-mixed, chemical-hardening powder products formulated for uses indicated.

2. For filling joints and treating fasteners of water-resistant gypsum backing board behind base for ceramic tile, use formulation recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for this purpose.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials for gypsum drywall construction which comply with referenced standards and the recommendations of the manufacturer of the gypsum board.

B. Spot Grout: ASTM C 475, setting-type joint compound of type recommended for spot grouting hollow metal door frames.

C. Fasteners: Type S steel drill screws, 1-inch long unless otherwise required for shaft wall or multi-layer application, with corrosion-resistant finish in form of cadmium plating or proprietary coating, and as follows:

1. For attachment of gypsum board panels to light gauge steel framing of less than 0.033 of an inch in thickness (20 gauge), provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.

2. For attachment of gypsum board panels, including sheathing, to steel framing from 0.033 (20 gauge) to 0.112 of an inch in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.

D. Air Infiltration Barrier: Asphalt-saturated organic felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt felt), unperforated; unless indicated otherwise.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine substrates to which drywall construction attaches or abuts, preset hollow metal frames, cast-in-anchors, and structural framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of drywall. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION FOR METAL SUPPORT SYSTEMS:

A. Ceiling Anchorages:

1. Coordinate installation of ceiling suspension system with installation of overhead structural systems to ensure that inserts and other structural anchorage provisions have been installed to receive ceiling anchors in a manner that will develop their full strength and at spacing required to support ceiling.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL:

A. Steel Framing Installation Standard: Install steel framing to comply with ASTM C 754 and with ASTM C 840 requirements that apply to framing installation.

B. Install supplementary framing, blocking and bracing at terminations in the work and for support of fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, cabinets, countertops, shelving, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, and similar construction to comply with details indicated and with recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer, or if none available, with “Gypsum Construction Handbook” published by United States Gypsum Co.

1. Refer to Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry” for additional information and requirements.

2. Provide additional horizontal framing (flat studs or tracks) at 24-inches o.c. minimum in walls at cabinets and at ends of countertops, and as otherwise required, to assure square corners and flat walls without bowing, warping, etc.

C. Isolate steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement, at locations indicated below to comply with details shown on Drawings:

1. Where edges of suspended ceilings abut building structure horizontally at ceiling perimeters or penetration of structural elements.

2. Where partition and wall framing abuts overhead structure:

a. Provide slip or cushioned type joints as detailed to attain lateral support and avoid axial loading.

b. Unless framing is specifically indicated to terminate below ceilings, all framing and gypsum board shall extend up to bottom of structure above.

D. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with steel framing or furring members; independently frame both sides of joints with framing or furring members or as indicated.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF STEEL FRAMING FOR SUSPENDED AND FURRED CEILINGS:

A. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.

2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with the location of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.

3. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

4. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

5. Secure hangers to structural support by connecting directly to structure where possible; otherwise, connect to anchorage devices or fasteners as indicated or required.

6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.

7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.

8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.

9. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes or conduit.

10. Keep hangers and braces 2-inches clear of ducts, pipes and conduits.

11. Sway-brace suspended steel framing with hangers used for support.

12. Install suspended steel framing components in sizes and at spacing indicated but not less than that required by referenced steel framing installation standard.

13. Installation Tolerances: Install steel framing components for suspended ceilings so that cross furring members or grid suspension members are level to within 1/8-inch in 12 ft. as measured both lengthwise on each member and transversely between parallel members.

14. Grid Suspension System: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension system meets vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

15. Suspension Systems:

    a. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows below, with system leveling tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12'-0".

    b. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.

    c. Wire Hangers: 0.1620-inch diameter (8 gauge), 4-feet on center. Install supplementary hangers as necessary at ceiling fixtures to provide a hanger at each corner of each fixture, diffuser, grille, and other ceiling-mounted equipment.

    d. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with the location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits indicated and as established by referenced standards.

    e. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

    f. Secure, angle, and rod hangers, (if any) to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for structure to which hangers are attached as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

    g. Space hangers not more than 4'-0" o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise shown, and provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.

h. Provide additional hangers as necessary, so that one hanger occurs on each side of lay-in and surface-mounted light fixtures, and at other grid supported equipment, devices, etc.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF STEEL FRAMING FOR WALLS AND PARTITIONS:

A. Install runners (tracks) at floors, ceilings and structural walls and columns, where gypsum drywall stud system abuts other construction.

B. Installation Tolerances: Install each steel framing and furring member so that fastening surface does not vary more than 1/8-inch from plane of faces of adjacent framing.

C. Extend wall and partition framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing over frames for doors and openings and frame around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling to provide support for gypsum board.

1. Provide studs up to tie to structure at 4'-0" o.c. minimum, from partitions terminating below ceilings.

D. Install steel studs and furring in sizes and at spacings, indicated but not less than that required by referenced steel framing installation standard.

E. Install steel studs so that flanges point in the same direction and gypsum boards can be installed in the direction opposite to that of the flange.

F. Install horizontal steel bridging/bracing in all walls, and the additional strap bracing at curved walls as steel framing progresses (refer to Paragraph 2.3 C and D above). Install in compliance with stud manufacturer's recommendations, at spacing indicated.

1. Galvanized steel strap bracing shall be provided continuous at top and bottom runner tracks and at bridging locations at all curved stud walls.

G. Frame door openings to comply with details indicated, with GA-219 and with applicable published recommendations of gypsum board manufacturer. Attach vertical studs at jambs with screws either directly to frames or to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

1. Extend vertical jamb studs (double studs-typical) through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Frame openings other than door openings to comply with details indicated, or if none indicated, in same manner as required for door openings; and install framing below sills of openings to match framing required for door heads.

## 3.6 APPLICATION AND FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL:

A. Gypsum Board Application and Finishing Standard: Install and finish gypsum board to comply with ASTM C 840 and GA-216.

B. Locate exposed end-butt joints as far from center of walls and ceilings as possible, and stagger not less than 24-inches in alternate courses of board.

C. Install ceiling boards across framing in the manner which minimizes the number of end-butt joints, and which avoids end joints in the central area of each ceiling. Stagger end joints at least 24- inches.

D. Install wall/partitions boards in manner which minimizes the number of end-butt joints or avoids them entirely where possible. At high walls, install boards horizontally with end joints staggered over studs.

E. Install exposed gypsum board with face side out. Do not install imperfect, damaged or damp boards. Butt boards together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16-inch open space between boards. Do not force into place.

F. Locate either edge or end joints over supports, except in horizontal applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Position boards so that like edges abut, tapered edges against tapered edges and mill-cut or field-cut ends against mill-cut or field-cut ends. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints over different studs on opposite sides of partitions.

G. Attach gypsum board to steel studs so that leading edge or end of each board is attached to open (unsupported) edge of stud flange first.

H. Attach gypsum board to supplementary framing and blocking provided for additional support at openings and cutouts.

I. Spot grout hollow metal door frames for solid core wood doors, hollow metal doors and doors over 32-inches wide. Apply spot grout at each jamb anchor clip just before inserting board into frame.

J. Form control joints and expansion joints at locations indicated, with space between edges of boards, prepared to receive trim accessories.

1. Provide control joints in long partitions and walls at a maximum spacing of 30 feet on center, unless a closer spacing is indicated. Provide control joints in large ceiling areas at a maximum spacing of 50 feet on center in each direction, unless a closer spacing is indicated. Consult with Architect on locations of all control joints prior to beginning work.

K. Cover both faces of steel stud partition framing with gypsum board in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except inside double or chase walls which are required to be braced internally.

1. Except where concealed application is required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. area, and may be limited to not less than 75% of full coverage.

2. Fit gypsum board around ducts, pipes, and conduits.

3. Where partitions intersect open concrete coffers, concrete joists, and other structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by coffers, joists, and other structural members; allow 1/4-to-1/2-inch-wide joints to install sealant.

4. Fire-stop around penetrations as required by Codes and authorities having jurisdiction. Refer to Section 07270 for additional information and requirements.

L. Where interior partitions are indicated to extend to the structure above, the drywall shall also extend to the structure with the same number of layers as required below the ceiling.

M. Isolate perimeter of non-load-bearing drywall partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4-inch to 1/2-inch space and trim edge with “U” bead edge trim. Seal joints with acoustical sealant.

N. At all interior walls, seal construction at perimeters, control and expansion joints, openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant including a bead at both faces of partitions. Comply with ASTM C 919 and manufacturer's recommendations for location of edge trim, and close off sound-flanking paths around or through construction, including sealing of partitions above acoustical ceilings.

O. Space fasteners in gypsum boards in accordance with referenced gypsum board application and finishing standard and manufacturer's recommendations.

P. Install "sound batts" and insulation as the work progresses. Refer to Section 07210 for additional information and requirements.

## 3.7 METHODS OF GYPSUM BOARD APPLICATION:

A. Single-layer Application: Install gypsum wallboard as follows:

1. On ceilings apply gypsum board prior to wall/partition board application to the greatest extent possible.

2. On partitions/walls apply gypsum board vertically (parallel to framing), unless otherwise indicated or required for fire or smoke resistive rated assemblies. Provide maximum length panels, to minimize end joints.

3. On partitions/walls 8'-1" or less in height apply gypsum board horizontally (perpendicular to framing); use maximum length sheets possible to minimize end joints.

B. Multi-Layer Application:

1. Install gypsum backing board for base layer and gypsum wallboard for face layer.

2. On ceilings apply base layer(s) prior to base layer application on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Offset joints between layers at least 10-inches. Apply base layers at right angles to supports unless otherwise indicated.

3. On partitions/walls apply base layer(s) and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers over supports and face layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member space from base layer joints.

C. Single-Layer Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum boards to supports as follows:

1. Fasten with screws.

D. Multi-Layer Fastening Methods:

1. Apply base layer(s) of gypsum board and face layer to base layer(s) as follows:

2. Fasten both base layer(s) and face layer separately to supports with screws.

## 3.8 INSTALLATION OF DRYWALL TRIM ACCESSORIES:

A. General: Where feasible, use the same fasteners to anchor trim accessory flanges as required to fasten gypsum board to the supports. Otherwise, fasten flanges to comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Install corner beads at external corners.

C. Install metal edge trim whenever edge of gypsum board would otherwise be exposed or semi-exposed, and except where plastic trim is indicated. Provide type with face flange to receive joint compound except where "U" bead (semi-finishing type) is indicated.

1. Install "LC" bead where drywall construction is tightly abutted to other construction and back flange can be attached to framing or supporting substrate.

2. Install "L" bead where edge trim can only be installed after gypsum board is installed.

3. Install U-type trim where edge is exposed, revealed, gasketed, or sealant-filled (including expansion joints).

D. Install edge trim where indicated on wall panels at juncture with ceilings.

E. Install control joints at locations indicated, or if not indicated, at spacings and locations required by referenced gypsum board application and finish standard, and approved by the Architect for visual effect.

## 3.9 FINISHING OF DRYWALL:

A. General: Apply treatment at gypsum board joints (both directions); flanges of corner bead, edge trim, and control joints; penetrations; fastener heads, surface defects and elsewhere as required to prepare work for decoration.

B. Prefill open joints and rounded or beveled edges, if any, using setting-type joint compound.

C. Apply joint tape at joints between gypsum boards, except where trim accessories are indicated.

D. Finish interior gypsum wallboard by applying the following joint compounds in 3 coats (not including prefill of openings in base), and sand between coats and after last coat:

1. Embedding and First Coat: Ready-mix drying-type all-purpose or taping compound.

2. Fill (Second) Coat: Ready-mix drying-type all-purpose or topping compound.

3. Finish (Third) Coat: Ready-mix drying-type all-purpose or topping compound.

E. Water-Resistant Gypsum Board and Exterior Gypsum Board: Finish joints between water-resistant backing board with tape and setting-type joint compound to comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and installation standards referenced in related sections.

F. Partial Finishing: Omit third coat and sanding on concealed drywall construction which is indicated for drywall finishing, except where finishing is required to achieve fire-resistance rating, sound rating or to act as air or smoke barrier.

## 3.10 GYPSUM WALL SHEATHING (if any):

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's current written instructions, GA 252, and the following for the installation of gypsum sheathing.

2. Cut boards at penetrations, edges and other obstructions of the work; fit tight against abutting work, except provide 3/8-inch setback where non-loadbearing work abuts structural elements at head and jambs.

3. Coordinate installation of sheathing with installation of flashing and joint sealers so that these combined materials are installed in the sequence and manner which prevents exterior moisture from passing through complete exterior wall assembly to the interior.

4. Apply fasteners so that screw heads bear tightly against face of gypsum sheathing boards but do not cut into face paper.

5. Do not bridge building expansion joints with gypsum sheathing; cut and space edges to match spacing of structural support elements.

B. Vertical Installation: Install 4-feet wide gypsum sheathing boards vertically with vertical edges centered over flanges of steel studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjoining boards. Screw-attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud as follows:

1. Fasteners spaced approximately 8-inches o.c. and set back 3/8-inch minimum from edges and ends of boards.

C. Air Infiltration Barrier Application:

1. Cover gypsum board sheathing with air infiltration barrier as follows:

2. Location: Apply felt type over gypsum sheathing occurring behind masonry veneer or metal siding.

3. Cut back air infiltration barrier 1/2-inch on each side of break in supporting members at control joint locations.

4. For asphalt-saturated organic felt and polyethylene film, apply horizontally with 2-inches overlap and 6-inches end-lap; fasten to sheathing with corrosion-resistant staples.

## 3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION OF WORK:

A. Promptly remove any joint compound and adhesives and similar residue from adjacent surfaces, as it may occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner suitable to Installer, which ensures gypsum drywall construction remain without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092813

CEMENTITIOUS BACKING BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Cementitious Sheathing.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 06 10 00 – Rough Carpentry.
2. Section 09 24 00 – Cementous Plastering

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American National Standards Institute:

1. ANSI A118.9: Specification for Cementitious Backer Units. B.

American Society for Testing and Materials:

1. ASTM C 954: Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch to 0.110 inch in Thickness.
2. ASTM C 1002: Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs.
3. ASTM C 1280: Standard Specification for Application of Gypsum Sheathing.
4. ASTM C 1325: Standard Specification for Non-Asbestos Fiber-Mat Reinforced Cement Interior Substrate Sheets.
5. ASTM D 226: Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing.
6. ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
7. ASTM E119: Test Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
8. ASTM E 1677: Standard Specification for an Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 00

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's current technical literature for product specified.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. All materials shall be delivered in their original unopened packages and stored in an enclosed shelter providing protection from damage and exposure to the elements. WARNING: Store all DUROCK Brand Cement Board flat. Panels are heavy and can fall over, causing serious injury or death. Do not move unless authorized.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEMENTITIOUS SHEATHING

A. Cementitious Fiber-Mat Reinforced Sheathing: ASTM C 1325 Type A, ANSI A118.9, cementitious backer.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DUROCK Brand Cement Board by United States Gypsum Company.
2. Type and Thickness: 5/8 inch thick.
3. Size: 48 by 96 inches.

### 2.2 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and application.

B. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: DUROCK Brand Steel or USG Sheathing SF steel drill screws 1-1/4 inch with corrosion-resistant coating.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film.
B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to

use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

D. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

3.3 CEMENTITIOUS SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ASTM C 1280, GA-253 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fasten sheathing to wood framing with screws.
2. Fasten sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
3. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
4. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.

C. Horizontal Installation: Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

2. Provide 3/8" control joints at column centerlines, with spacing not to exceed 16' in each direction. Where staggered panels would bridge a control joint, cut panel into two sections. Provide a cold-formed metal framing stud on each side of a control joint. Use stucco manufacturer's recommended vinyl vee trim to close joint.

D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
2. Provide 3/8" control joints at column centerlines, with spacing not to exceed 16' in each direction. Where staggered panels would bridge a control joint, cut panel into two sections. Provide a cold-formed metal framing stud on each side of a control joint. Use stucco manufacturer's recommended vinyl vee trim to close joint.

3.4 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.

1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
3. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
4. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.5 PROTECTION

Cementitious Fiber-Mat Reinforced Sheathing: A continuous water barrier must be installed over the studs and lap over the flashing. Weeps must be provided to allow water drainage out of the system at all horizontal terminations

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09300

# TILE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

1. Section 03310 - “Concrete”
2. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers” (sealing expansion joints in tile work)

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

A. Definition: Tile includes ceramic surfacing units made from clay or other ceramic materials.

B. Extent of tile work is indicated on drawings and schedules. Provide grout setting bed sloped to floor drains at locations where recessed slabs are indicated.

C. Types of tile work in this section include the following:

1. Porcelain ceramic tile flooring, and glazed wall tile, coved base and trim.

a. Patterns as indicated by the Architect.

3. Stone thresholds, where indicated.

4. Colored grouts.

5. Waterproofing membrane below all tile work in rooms with toilet fixtures, sinks and lavatories, and below tile work at control and expansion joints in width indicated.

D. Chemical Resistant Epoxy grout installation system is required at entire are within Toilet and Shower Rooms, at Janitor’s Rooms, at Kitchens, and rooms where food is stored, prepared, cooked, served, and dining areas, where tile is scheduled to occur, and at any exterior tile work.

E. Note that all tile flooring, base, and wall tile specified herein shall be installed with grouted joints, also as specified.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Source of Materials: Provide materials obtained from one source for each type and color of tile, grout, and setting materials.

B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has successfully completed tile installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.

1. Refer to Division 1 Section “Special Conditions”, for additional information and minimum experience requirements.

C. Flooring Products: Installation surfaces' co-efficient of friction (slip-resistance), etc., shall be as designed by the manufacturer to comply with published U.S. Justice Department Regulations for the "Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990" (ADA, ADA-AG), ANSI A 117.1, and the "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards" (UFAS), 1988 Edition; And revisions and amendments thereto.

1. Where this requires any substitution of products specified herein, advise Architect in writing prior to Bid Date, for necessary approvals.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for materials required, except bulk materials.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating tile patterns and locations and widths of control, isolation, contraction and expansion joints in tile surfaces.

C. Samples for Initial Selection Purposes: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual stone and tiles or sections of tile showing full range of colors, textures and patterns available for each type of tile indicated. Include samples of grout and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification Purposes, submit the following upon request by Architect:

1. Samples for each type of tile and for each color and texture required, not less than 12-inches square, on plywood or hardboard backing and grouted.

2. Full size samples for each type of trim, accessory and for each color.

3. 6-inch long samples of stone thresholds.

E. Certification: Furnish Master Grade Certificates for each shipment and type of tile, signed by manufacturer and Installer.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter or other causes.

1. Comply with requirements of ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.

B. Refer to Division 1 Sections "Summary of Work" and "Special Conditions" for additional information and requirements regarding stored materials.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.

B. Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.

C. Maintain temperatures at not less than 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) in tiled areas during installation and for 7-days after completion, unless higher temperatures are required by referenced installation standard and/or tile and grout manufacturers' current written instructions and recommendations.

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following manufacturers:

1. Manufacturers of Porcelain Ceramic Tile:

   a. American Olean Tile Co., Inc.
   b. Aztec Ceramics Corp.
   c. Cerdisa
   d. Crossville Ceramics
   e. Dal-Tile Corp.
   f. Flor Gres Porcelain Stoneware
   g. Mid-State Tile
   h. Quamagra Tile, Inc.
   i. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
   j. Smov
   k. United States Ceramic Tile Co.
   l. Wenczel Tile Co.
   m. Winburn Tile Manufacturing Co.

2. Manufacturers of Latex-Portland Cement Mortars:

   a. American Olean Tile Co., Inc.
   b. Boiardi Products Corp.
   c. Cambridge Tile Mfg. Co.
   d. Custom Building Products.
   e. C-Cure Chemical Co., Inc.
   f. H. B. Fuller Co.
   g. Jamo, Inc.
   h. L & M Surco Mfg., Inc.
   i. Laticrete International, Inc.
   j. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
   k. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
   l. Syracuse Adhesives Co.
   m. Upco Co. Div., Emhart Corp.
   n. W. R. Bonsal Co.

3. Manufacturers of Organic Adhesives, Type I:

   a. Boiardi Products Corp.
   b. Cambridge Tile Mfg. Co.
   c. Custom Building Products.
   d. C-Cure Chemical Co., Inc.
   e. H. B. Fuller Co.
   f. Jamo, Inc.
   g. L & M Surco Mfg., Inc.
   h. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
   i. Syracuse Adhesives Co.
   j. Upco Co. Div., Emhart Corp.

4. Manufacturers of Latex-Portland Cement Grouts:

   a. Boiardi Products Corp.
   b. Cambridge Tile Mfg. Co.
   c. Custom Building Products.
   d. C-Cure Chemical Co., Inc.
   e. H. B. Fuller Co.
   f. Jamo, Inc.
   g. L & M Surco Mfg., Inc.
   h. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
   i. Syracuse Adhesives Co.
   j. Upco Co. Div., Emhart Corp.
   k. W. R. Bonsal Co.

5. Manufacturers of Chemical Resistant Epoxy Grouts:

   a. Atlas Minerals & Chemicals, Inc.
   b. Boiardi Products Corp.
   c. Cambridge Tile Mfg. Co.
   d. C-Cure Chemical Co., Inc.
   e. H. B. Fuller Co.
   f. L & M Surco Mfg., Inc.
   g. Laticrete International, Inc.
   h. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
   i. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
   j. Syracuse Adhesives Co.
   k. Upco Co. Div., Emhart Corp.

6. Manufacturers of Chemical-Resistant Joint Sealants:

   a. Atlas Minerals and Chemical Co.
   b. Pennwalt Corporation.

7. Manufacturers of Tile Cleaners:

   a. Hillyard Chemical Co.
   b. L & M Surco Mfg. Co., Inc.

## 2.2 PRODUCTS - GENERAL:

A. ANSI Standard for Ceramic Tile: Comply with ANSI A137.1 “American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile” for types and grades of tile indicated.

   1. Furnish tile complying with “Standard Grade” requirements unless otherwise indicated.

B. ANSI Standard for Tile Installation Materials: Comply with ANSI standard referenced with products and materials indicated for setting and grouting.

C. Colors, Textures and Patterns: For tile, grout and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures or other appearance characteristics, provide products to match characteristics indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standards.

   1. Provide tile trim and accessories which match color and finish of adjoining flat tile.

D. Mounting: Where factory-mounted tile is required provide back or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless another mounting method is indicated.

1. Where tile is indicated for installation, on exteriors or in wet areas, do not use back or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies that this type of mounting is suitable for these kinds of use and has been successfully used on other projects.

## 2.3 CERAMIC TILE PRODUCTS:

A. Ceramic Floor Tile (floor tile): Provide square-edged flat tile complying with the following requirements;

1. Wearing Surface: Abrasive embedded in surface where slip-resistant tile is indicated or required by Code or referenced standards; Non-abrasive elsewhere.

2. Nominal Facial Dimensions: 6-inches x 48-inches, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

3. Nominal Thickness: 3/8-inches.

4. Color: Colors will be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line of standard colors, after Bid Date.

5. Trim Units: 6-inches high x 12-inches wide x 1/2-inches thick, coved, and to align with joints in adjoining flat tile unless not practical or approved otherwise. Bullnose to match color.

6. Provide with removable coating, to remain until grouting is complete and to be removed prior to application of filler/sealer.

B. Glazed Ceramic Tile (wall tile): Provide square-edged flat tile complying with the following requirements;

1. Wearing Surface: Non-abrasive.

2. Nominal Facial Dimensions: 4-inches x 4-inches, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

3. Nominal Thickness: 3/8-inches.

4. Color: Colors will be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line of standard colors, after Bid Date.

5. Bullnose to match color.

6. Provide with removable coating, to remain until grouting is complete and to be removed prior to application of filler/sealer.

C. Trim Units: Provide tile trim units, if indicated, to match characteristics of adjoining flat tile and to comply with following requirements; to match existing:

1. Size: As indicated, coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile, where applicable.

2. Shapes (if any): As follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

a. Base for Portland Cement Mortar and thinset Mortar Installations: Coved.

b. Wainscot Cap for Portland Cement Mortar Installations: Bullnose cap.

c. Wainscot Cap for Thinset Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose.

d. External Corners for Portland Cement Mortar Installations: Bullnose shape with a radius of not less than 3/4-inch unless otherwise indicated.

e. External Corners for Thinset Installations: Surface bullnose.

3. Colors: Colors will be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line of standard colors, after Bid Date.

## 2.4 STONE THRESHOLDS:

A. General: Provide stone which is uniform in color and finish, fabricated to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between tile surfaces and adjoining finished floor surfaces.

B. Marble Thresholds: Provide marble thresholds complying with ASTM C 503 requirements for exterior use and abrasion resistance for uses subject to heavy foot traffic.

1. Color shall be white, if not indicated on drawings.

2. Provide white, honed marble complying with MIA Group "A" requirements for soundness, where indicated to be white.

3. Size: 2-inches wide x 1-inch thick (nominal) with beveled exposed edges, unless otherwise indicated or required.

a. Provide heavy duty wide thresholds at interior doors and wall openings leading into kitchen and serving areas and related/contiguous offices, storage rooms, utility rooms, etc., and where mobile equipment and hand trucks may pass over. Size: 5-inches wide x 1-1/4-inch thick (nominal), with beveled exposed edges.

## 2.5 SETTING MATERIALS:

A. Portland Cement Mortar Installation Materials: Provide materials to comply with ANSI A108.1 as required for installation method designated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: Provide product complying with ANSI A118.4 and the following requirement for composition:

1. Latex additive (water emulsion) of type described below, serving as a replacement for part or all of gauging water, added at job site to prepackaged dry mortar mix supplied or specified by latex manufacturer.

a. Latex Type: Acrylic resin.

C. Organic Adhesive: Provide product complying with ANSI A136.1 for Type I.

## 2.6 GROUTING MATERIALS:

A. Latex-Portland Cement Grout: Provide product complying with ANSI A118.6 for the following composition and of color indicated:

1. Latex additive (water emulsion) serving as a replacement for part or all of gauging water, added at job site to prepackaged dry grout mix, with type of latex and dry grout mix complying with requirements indicated below:

   a. Latex Type: Acrylic resin.

   b. Grout Type: Commercial portland cement grout specified or supplied by latex manufacturer.

B. Chemical Resistant Epoxy Grout: Provide product complying with ANSI A118.3 of color indicated.

1. Provide product with resistance to temperatures up to 300 degrees F (149 degrees C), certified by grout manufacturer for intended use.

2. Locations: All floor, base, and wall tile work within Toilet Rooms, at Janitor's Rooms, at rooms where food is stored, prepared and/or cooked, and at exterior tile work.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

A. Filler/Sealer for Quarry Tile: Proprietary product designed for filling quarry tile to prevent staining.

B. Tile Cleaner: Product specifically acceptable to manufacturer of tile and grout manufacturer for application indicated and as recommended by National Tile Promotion Federation, 112 North Alfred Street, Alexandria, VA 22134 or Ceramic Tile Institute, 700 North Virgil Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90029.

C. Waterproofing Membrane: Equivalent to "ECB Anti-Fracture Membrane", as manufactured by NAC Products, Inc.; Cuyahoga Falls, Ohio (Phone: 1-800-633-4622).

1. Provide complete system, including substrate primer/sealer, 40-mil, two component, self-adhering membrane, and appropriate top-coat primer for the material(s) to be placed over the ECB system.

2. Locations for Use:

   a. Below all tile flooring in rooms with toilet fixtures, sinks, and lavatories, turned up 1-inch at all edges and concealed by base material, and turned down at least 2-inches into floor drains.
   b. Below tile flooring and centered over control and expansion joints, in rooms other than above, 12-inches wide and wall to wall.

3. Completed membrane system is intended for waterproofing, and to bridge substrate joints within the limitations stated in manufacturer's current written product data.

## 2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT:

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with requirements of referenced standards and manufacturers for accurately proportioning of materials, water or additive content, mixing equipment and mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine surfaces to receive tile work and conditions under which tile will be installed. Do not proceed with tile work until surfaces and conditions comply with requirements indicated in referenced tile installation standard.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, and free from oil or waxy films and curing or cleaning compounds.

2. Verify that installation of all required grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.

B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions and incomplete work have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standard: Comply with applicable parts of ANSI 108 series of tile installation standards included under "American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile."

B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation"; comply with TCA installation methods indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as applicable to installation conditions shown.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures, to form a complete covering without interruptions, except as otherwise shown. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures and other penetrations so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Unless otherwise shown, lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls and trim are same size. Layout tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise shown.

1. For tile mounted in sheets make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so that extent of each sheet is not apparent in finished work.

F. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant filled joints, including control, contraction and isolation joints, where indicated, or if not indicated, at spacings and locations recommended in TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation," and approved by Architect. Do not saw cut joints.

1. Sealing of joints is specified in Section 07900 - "Joint Sealers."

2. Provide expansion joints in tile and setting beds directly above all unsealed and unbridged expansion joints, control joints, construction joints, cold joints and saw-cut control joints in the building structure; and where tile work abuts restraining surfaces such as perimeter walls, dissimilar floors, curbs, columns, pipes, ceilings, and where changes occur in backing materials. Expansion joints shall be provided as follows:

a. Floor Tile: Minimum 1/4-inch joint width; joints 36-feet o.c. maximum.

3. Joints in tile and setting materials directly over any unsealed and unbridged structural joints shall never be narrower than the width of the structural joint. Joints over saw-cut control joints shall never be less than the width of the saw-cut joint width. Preparation and installation shall be as required for expansion joints.

4. To insure that locations of any unsealed and unbridged joints in tile work align with existing joints in substrates, joints in tile work shall be constructed during installation of mortar beds and/or tile, rather than saw-cutting joints after installation.

5. Keep expansion joint cavities open and free of dirt, debris, grout, mortar and setting materials.

6. Set compressible back-up strip when mortar is placed or utilize removable wood strip to provide space for back-up after mortar has cured.

7. Install sealant after tile work and grout are dry.

G. Grout tile to comply with the requirements of the following installation standards:

1. For ceramic tile grouts (sand-portland cement, dry-set, commercial portland cement, and latex-portland cement grouts) comply with ANSI A108.10.

2. For chemical resistant epoxy grouts comply with ANSI A108.6.

## 3.3 FLOOR INSTALLATION METHODS:

A. Quarry Tile: Install tile to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed method, TCA installation method related to type of subfloor construction, and grout type:

1. Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1.

2. Bond Coat: Portland cement paste on plastic bed or the following thin-set mortar on cured bed, ANSI A108.5, at Contractor's option:

a. Latex-portland cement mortar.

3. Concrete Subfloor, Interior: TCA F111 or F121.

4. Concrete Subfloor, Interior: TCA F112 (bonded).

5. Concrete Subfloor, Interior: TCA F114 (with epoxy chemical resistant resin grout).

6. Grout:

a. Latex-portland cement (ANSI 108.10).

b. Chemical resistant epoxy (ANSI 108.6).

7. Grout - Locations for Use:

a. Latex-portland cement, (interior).

b. Epoxy (exterior, and where indicated at interior).

B. Ceramic Tile: Install tile to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to types of subfloor construction, and grout types:

1. Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1.

2. Bond Coat: Portland cement paste on plastic bed or the following thin-set mortar on cured bed or concrete slabs, ANSI A108.5, at Contractors option:

a. Latex-portland cement mortar.

3. Concrete Subfloors, Interior: TCA F112 (bonded).

4. Concrete Subfloors, Interior: TCA F114 (with chemical resistant epoxy grout).

5. Grout:

a. Latex-portland cement (interior).

b. Chemical Resistant Epoxy: ANSI 108.6.

C. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile unless otherwise indicated.

1. Set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar for locations where mortar bed would otherwise be exposed above adjacent non-tile floor finish.

## 3.4 WALL TILE AND TRIM INSTALLATION METHODS:

A. Install types of tile designated for wall application to comply with requirements indicated below for setting bed methods, TCA installation methods related to subsurface wall conditions, and grout types:

1. Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A108.1.

a. Masonry or Concrete, Interior: TCA W211 (bonded).

b. Grout: Sand-portland cement (ANSI 108.10), except chemical resistant epoxy (ANSI 118.3) at toilet rooms.

c. Location: Quarry tile bases at locations indicated on Drawings, and otherwise as applicable at conditions required by actual project conditions.

2. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A108.4.

a. Solid Backing, Interior: TCA W223.

b. Grout: Latex-portland cement, (ANSI 108.10), except chemical resistant epoxy (ANSI 118.3) at toilet rooms.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION - TILE WORK:

A. Cleaning: Upon completion of placement and grouting, clean all new and adjacent existing tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Unglazed tile may be cleaned with acid solutions only when permitted by tile and grout manufacturer's printed instructions, but no sooner than 14-days after installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.

2. Remove temporary protective wax coating from quarry tile, using methods recommended by manufacturers of tile and grout.

    a. Apply quarry tile filler to clean, dry quarry tile in compliance with filler manufacturer's directions. Repeat application as necessary to obtain uniform color in appearance of both tile and grout.

B. Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, or otherwise defective tile work.

C. Protection: When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage and wear.

1. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with draft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.

2. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from using tiled floors for at least 7-days after grouting is completed.

3. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF TILE

SECTION 095110

ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere includes:

.. Section 06100 - “Rough Carpentry” (concealed P.T. wood blocking and grounds)
.. Section 06200 - “Finish Carpentry”
.. Section 07210 - “Building Insulation”
.. Section 07900 - “Joint Sealers”
.. Section 09250 - “Gypsum Drywall”
.. Division 15 - (Mechanical items, etc., mounted in ceilings).
.. Division 16 - (Electrical items, light fixtures, etc., mounted in ceilings).

C. Thermal insulation for installation on acoustical panel ceilings, if required, is specified in Section 07210 - “Building Insulation.”

### 1.2 SUMMARY:

A. This Section includes acoustical and non-acoustical panel ceilings installed with exposed grid suspension systems.

1. Type 1 (ACT-1): Square Edge Tile.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS:

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

1. Product data for each type of product specified.

2. Samples for verification purposes of each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples of size indicated below and of same thickness and material indicated for final unit of Work. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing full range of variations expected.

a. 6-inch-square samples of each acoustical panel type, pattern, and color.

b. Set of 12-inch-long samples of exposed suspension system members, including moldings, for each color and system type required.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has successfully completed acoustical ceilings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for Project, and which is acceptable

to manufacturer of acoustical products herein, as indicated by written statement by their manufacturer(s).

1. Refer to Section 01015 - "Special Conditions", for additional experience requirements and information.

B. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Provide acoustical ceilings that are identical to those tested for the following fire-performance characteristics, per ASTM test method indicated below, by UL or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.

1. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A products.

a. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
b. Smoke Developed: 50 or less.

C. Acoustical Performance Characteristics: Provide acoustical ceiling systems which have been tested by UL or other acceptable independent testing organization, to certify compliance with STC and CAC minimum requirements indicated herein.

D. Single-Source Responsibility for Ceiling Units: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling unit from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying progress of the Work.

E. Coordination of Work: Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical ceiling units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and wall and partition systems.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

A. Space Enclosure: Do not install interior acoustical ceilings until space is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient conditions of temperature and humidity will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

## 1.7 EXTRA MATERIAL:

A. Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with appropriate labels.

1. Acoustical and Non-Acoustical Ceiling Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed, in whole unused cartons.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACOUSTICAL CEILING UNITS, GENERAL:

A. Standard for Acoustical Ceiling Units: Provide manufacturer's standard units of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by reference to types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectance, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400 (plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches [400 mm] away from the test surface) per ASTM E 795.

B. Colors and Patterns: Provide products to match appearance characteristics indicated under each product type, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors, surface textures, and patterns available for ceiling panels and exposed metal suspension systems of quality indicated herein.

### 2.2 ACOUSTICAL UNITS:

A. Type 1 (ACT-1): Manufacturer's standard lay-in non-directional random pattern, lightly fissured, heavily perforated panels, and as follows, unless indicated otherwise:

1. Size: 24 inches x 24 inches x 3/4 inch.

2. Edge: 9/16 beveled tegular.

3. NRC Range: .70 - .80.

4. CAC Range: 35-39.

5. Color: White.

6. Manufacturer/Product No.:

a. USG "Frost Clima-Plus Premium"

7. Grid: USG Fine Line DXF 9/16-inch exposed tee grid, in standard white color.

### 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL:

A. Standard for Metal Suspension Systems: Provide manufacturer's standard metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable ASTM C 635 requirements.

B. Finishes and Colors: Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated, unless otherwise required.

1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635 requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity finishes are indicated.

a. Product/Manufacturer:

1) "Environmental ZXA Grid System," as manufactured by USG Interiors or Donn.
2) "Exposed Environmental (HD) Series," as manufactured by National Rolling Mills.
3) "Prelude Plus" Environmental Tee System, as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

C. Attachment Devices: Size for 5 times design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.

D. Wire for Hangers and Ties: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, pre-stretched.

1. Gauge: Provide wire sized to that stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct-Hung), will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch diameter (12 gauge).

E. Hanger Rods - (as required): Mild steel, zinc coated, or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

F. Angle Hangers - (as required): Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide, formed with 0.0365-inch-thick galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 446, Coating Designation G90, with bolted connections and 5/16-inch-diameter bolts.

G. Edge Moldings and Trim: Metal or extruded aluminum of types and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that fit type of edge detail and suspension system indicated.

H. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide suspension systems of one of the following:

1. Manufacturers of Steel Exposed Suspension Systems:

a. Same as ceiling panel unit manufacturer.
b. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
c. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
d. Donn Corporation.

2. Manufacturers of Moldings and Trim:

a. Construction Specialties.
b. Fry Reglet Corporation.
c. Gordon, Inc.
d. MM Systems.
e. Technical Ceiling Systems, Inc.
f. Same as Suspension system manufacturer.

## 2.4 NON-FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED DIRECT-HUNG SUSPENSION SYSTEMS:

A. Wide-Face Capped Double-Web Steel Suspension System: Main and cross-runners roll-formed from prepainted or electrolytic zinc-coated cold-rolled steel sheet, with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges; other characteristics as follows:

1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-Duty System.

2. End Condition of Cross-Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type, as standard with manufacturer.

3. Cap Material and Finish:

a. Steel sheet, painted (typical).
b. Aluminum sheet with painted finish, (at “Environmental Grid Systems”).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Examine substrates and structural framing to which ceiling system attaches or abuts, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other sections that affect installation and anchorage of ceiling system. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION:

A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors, or supports, whose installation is specified in other sections.

1. Furnish galvanized inserts and similar devices as required for wood structure (if required), to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.

B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less-than-half-width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION:

A. General: Install acoustical ceiling systems to comply with installation standard referenced below, per manufacturer’s current written instructions and CISCA “Ceiling Systems Handbook.”

1. Standard for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems: Comply with ASTM C 636.

B. Arrange acoustical units and orient directionally patterned units, (if any) in a manner shown by reflected ceiling plans.

1. Install panels with pattern running in one direction, as indicated, or if not indicated, as requested from and directed by Architect.

C. Suspend ceiling hangers from building structural members and as follows, with system leveling tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12'-0":

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.

2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with the location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in

form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.

3. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eyescrews, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

4. Secure, angle, and rod hangers, (if any) to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eyescrews, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for structure to which hangers are attached as well as for type of hanger involved, and in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

5. Space hangers not more than 4'-0" o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise shown, and provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.

   a. Provide additional hangers as necessary, so that one hanger occurs on each side of lay-in and surface-mounted light fixtures, and at other grid supported equipment, devices, etc.

6. Install “high humidity finish” systems at all areas indicated to receive lay-in vinyl-faced gypsum “non-acoustical” ceiling panels.

D. Install edge moldings of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical units.

1. Screw-attach moldings to substrate at intervals not over 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12'-0". Miter corners accurately and connect securely.

## 3.4 CLEANING:

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer’s instructions for cleaning and touch-up of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

## 3.5 EXTRA MATERIALS:

A. Deliver extra materials stock as indicated above, to Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099113

EXTERIOR PAINTING

## PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of exposed exterior items and surfaces. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.

B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned~ paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. Refer to Finish Schedule for specific paint colors. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from full range of standard colors and finishes available.

C. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron supports, and surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment that do not have a factory-applied final finish.

D. Do not paint themed items. Finishing of themed items shall be part of "Themeing Contract".

E. Do not paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:

   a. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.

   b. Light fixtures.

2. Finished metal surfaces include the following:

   a Anodized aluminum.

   b. Stainless steel.

   c. Chromium plate.

   d. Copper and copper alloys.

   e. Bronze and brass.

3. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:

   a. Valve and damper operators.

   b. Linkages.

   c. Sensing devices.

   d. Motor and fan shafts.

4. Labels: Do not paint over UL, FMG, or other code-required labels or equipment name,

identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

F. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming exterior railings.
2. Division 08 Section "Standard Steel Doors and Frames" for factory priming steel doors and frames.
3. Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

1. A Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
3. Semi gloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
4. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each paint system indicated .. Include block fillers and primers.

1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square for flat surfaces and 8 inches long for linear elements.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated, cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

E. Qualification Data: For Applicator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in

material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.

C. MPI Standards: Preparation and Workmanship, comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:

1. Product name or title of material.
2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
5. Thinning instructions.
6. Application instructions.
7. Color name and number.
8. VOC content.

B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain storage containers in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily.

1. 7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Products: The design is based on the products listed as manufactured by PPG Industries (Pittsburgh Paints). Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other following manufacturers:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Benjamin Moore).
2. PPG Industries, Inc. (Pittsburgh Paints).
3. Sherwin-Williams Co. (Sherwin-Williams).

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Material Quality:

1. Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
2. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

C. Colors: Refer to Finish Schedule. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 E.I.F.S CLEANER

A. Basis-of-Design: The design for Existing E.I.F.S. is based on "Enviro Klean EIFS Clean N Prep" manufactured by Prosoco. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by another approved manufacturer.

B. Do not use acidic cleaner.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Wood: 15 percent.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers ..

D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

E. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

F. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.

C. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

D. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.

1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.

2. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete and concrete unit masonry to be painted.
   Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.

   a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.

   b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Wood: Clean· surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.

   a. Scrape and clean small, dry~ seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

   b. Prime wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.

4. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.

   a. Blast steel surfaces clean as recommended by paint system manufacturer and according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No.3.

   b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.

   c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged.
      Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with same primer as the shop coat.

5. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface

is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.

6. E.LF.S.: Clean EIFS surfaces with EIFS cleaner followed by a mild pressurized water clean and rinse. Comply with cleaner's manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.

3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

F. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each

3.3 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.

2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.

3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.

4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.

5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only ..

6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.

7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.

8. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.

B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by

manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.

2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.

3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, comers, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.

4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.

C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.

3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.

D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed on rooftops and other visible exterior areas.

F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Uninsulated metal piping.

2. Uninsulated plastic piping.

3. Pipe hangers and supports.

4. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

5. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.

6. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.

7. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

8. All items exposed to public view.

G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Switchgear.

2. Panel boards.

3. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

4. All items exposed to public view.

H. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.

I. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

J. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage.
Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.

K. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:

B. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of Contractor.

C. Owner may direct Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the noncomplying paint. If necessary, Contractor may be required to remove noncomplying paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING

A. At the end of each workday, remove empty CaI1$, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.

B. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.

B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.

C. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA Pl.

3.7 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. Wood: Provide the following finish system over exterior wood surfaces to receive opaque finish:

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.

   a Primer: Exterior Alkyd-Oil Reain. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-9 Series Speed Hide Exterior Wood Primer Oil. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.8 mil.

   b. Finish Coats: Exterior semi-gloss acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6900 Series Speed Hide Exterior House & Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Paint. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

B. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal.

Primer is not required on shop-primed items.

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.

   a Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-208 Speed hide Interior Exterior Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

   b. Finish Coats: Exterior semi-gloss acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6900 Series Speed Hide Exterior House & Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Paint. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

C. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior zinc-coated metal surfaces:

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a galvanized metal primer.

   a. Primer: Exterior galvanized metal primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 90- 708 Pitt-Tech Interior Exterior Primer Finish DTM Industrial Enamel. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.

2. Finish Coats: Exterior semi-gloss acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6900 Series Speed Hide Exterior House & Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Paint. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099123

INTERIOR PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of exposed interior items and surfaces. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.

B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. Refer to Finish Schedule for specific paint colors. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from full range of standard colors and finishes available.

C. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron supports, and surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment that do not have a factory-applied final finish.

D. Painting shall include identification of fire and smoke partitions. All smoke stop partitions and fire-rated walls or partitions required to have protected openings shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling in a manner acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Such identification shall be above any decorative ceiling and in concealed spaces. Unless otherwise directed by authority having jurisdiction, wording shall read "Fire and Smoke Barrier - Protect all Openings".

E. Do not paint themed items. Finishing of themed items shall be part of "Theming Contract" .

F. Do not paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:

a. Toilet enclosures.

b. Elevator entrance doors and frames.

c. Elevator equipment.

d. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment, except paint exposed equipment in ceiling areas of exposed structure.

e. Light fixtures.

2. Concealed surfaces include walls or ceilings in the following generally inaccessible spaces:

a. Furred areas.
b. Ceiling plenums.

c. Utility tunnels.

d. Pipe spaces.

e. Duct shafts.

f. Elevator shafts.

3. Finished metal surfaces include the following:

a. Anodized aluminum.

b. Stainless steel.

c. Chromium plate.

d. Copper and copper alloys.

e. Bronze and brass.

4. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:

a. Valve and damper operators.

b. Linkages.

c. Sensing devices.

d. Motor and fan shafts.

5. Labels: Do not paint over UL, FMG, or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

G. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel" for shop priming structural steel.

2. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming ferrous metal.

3. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs" for shop priming ferrous metal.

4. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming interior railings.

5. Division 08 Section "Standard Steel Doors and Frames" for factory priming steel doors and frames.

6. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for factory-finishing of wood doors and factory priming of wood doors for opaque finish.

7. Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

A. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.

B. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

C. Semi gloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

D. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each paint system indicated. Include block fillers and primers.

1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.

2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square for flat surfaces and 8 inches long for linear elements.

2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.

3. Label each coat of each Sample.

4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated, cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

E. Qualification Data: For Applicator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.

C. MPI Standards: Preparation and Workmanship, comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:

1. Product name or title of material.
2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
5. Thinning instructions.
6. Application instructions.
7. Color name and number.
8. VOC content.

B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain storage containers in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily.

1 .7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Products: The design is based on the products listed as manufactured by PPG Industries (Pittsburgh Paints). Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other following manufacturers:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Benjamin Moore).
2. PPG Industries, Inc. (Pittsburgh Paints).
3. Sherwin-Williams Co. (Sherwin-Williams).

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CPR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) and the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to primers or finishes that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 50 gIL.
2. Non Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
3. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
4. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
   a. Acrolein.
   b. Acrylonitrile.
   c. Antimony.

d. Benzene.

e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.

f. Cadmium.

g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.

h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.

i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.

j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.

k. Diethyl phthalate.

1. Dimethyl phthalate.

m. Ethylbenzene.

n. Fonnaldehyde.

o. Hexavalent chromium.

p. Isophorone.

q. Lead.

r. Mercury.

s. Methyl ethyl ketone.

t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.

u. Methylene chloride.

v. Naphthalene.

w. Toluene (methylbenzene).

x. l,l,l .. trichloroethane.

y. Vinyl chloride.

C. Material Quality:

1. Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.

2. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

D. Colors: Refer to Finish Schedule. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
2. Wood: 15 percent.
3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

E. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

F. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request. furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI" Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories. plates. machined surfaces, lighting fixtures. and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled . in the trades involved.

C. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

D. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular----substrate-condition-and-as--specified.

1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.
2. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete and concrete unit masonry to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.
    a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.
    b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate

tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.

   a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

   b. Prime wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.

4. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.

   a. Blast steel surfaces clean as recommended by paint system manufacturer and according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No.3.

   b. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.

   c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer and touch up with same primer as the shop coat.

5. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.

6. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

7. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

E. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.

2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.

3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

F. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.

1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.

B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned~ pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.

1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through :final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where. it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.

C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.

D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied.

1. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Uninsulated metal piping.

b. Uninsulated plastic piping.

c. Pipe hangers and supports.

d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.

f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.

g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

h. All items exposed to public view.

2. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Switchgear.

b. Panelboards.

c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

d. All items exposed to public view.

F. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.

G. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

H. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.

I. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:

B. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample paint material . being used. Samples of material delivered to Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of Contractor.

C. Owner may direct Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply

with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the noncomplying paint. If necessary, Contractor may be required to remove noncomplying paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING

A. At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.

B. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.

B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.

C. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA Pl.

3.7 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:

1. Eggshell Vinyl Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer. Provide only one finish coat over a primer behind Themeing

a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-2· Speed Hide Interior Quick-Drying Latex Sealer. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.

b. Finish Coats: Interior eggshell vinyl acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6411 Series Speed Hide Interior Enamel Eggshell Latex. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.25 mils.

B. Wood: Provide the following finish system over interior wood surfaces to receive opaque finish:

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.

a. Primer: Interior wood primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-8-55 Series Speed Hide Interior Latex Enamel Undercoater. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.

b. Finish Coats: Interior semi-gloss acrylic latex. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-510 Series Speed Hide Interior Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.

C. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over ferrous metal:

1. Semi gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.

a. Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 90-708 Pitt-Tech Interior Exterior Primer Finish DTM Industrial Enamel. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.

b. Finish Coats: Interior semi-gloss acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6500 Series Speed Hide Interior Semi-Gloss Latex. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.

D. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over interior zinc-coated metal surfaces:

1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.

a. Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer. Pittsburgh Paints, 90-708 Pitt-Tech Interior Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.

b. Finish Coats: Interior semi-gloss acrylic enamel. Pittsburgh Paints, 6500 Series Speed Hide Interior Semi-Gloss Latex. Apply at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.

E. Areas of Exposed Structure: Provide the following finish system over interior primed ferrous metal surface, zinc-coated metal surfaces, including all exposed structural members, deck, ductwork, piping and electrical conduit, and spray-fireproofing:

1. Acrylic Dry Fog Coating. One finish coat over primer.

a. Primer:

b. Finish Coat: Factory-formulated flat acrylic dry fog coating for interior spray application. Pittsburgh Paints, 6-725 Series Speed hide Interior Super Tech WB Acrylic Dry-Fog Flat Latex: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.1 mil.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102800

TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

## PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

This Section includes public-use washroom accessories.

1.3 SUBMITALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:

1. Construction details and dimensions.

2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.

3. Material and finish descriptions.

4. Features that will be included for Project.

B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated on Drawings.

2. Identify products using designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same articles in Part 2, provide products of same manufacturer unless otherwise approved by Architect.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFP A 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 COORDINATION

Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by· people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304,0.0312-inch minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/ A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), O.0359-inch minimum nominal thickness.

C. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as. accessory unit and

tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.

D. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).

E. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

F. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nomina16.0 mm thick.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated and coordinated with construction drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. American Specialties, Inc.
2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
3. Bradley Corporation.

B. Grab Bar:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Model 812 by Bradley.
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
4. Finish: Smooth, No.4, satin finish on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
5. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
6. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Mop Holder With Shelf:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Model 9984 by Bradley.
2. Mounting Height: 60-inches A.F.F. to top of shelf.

D. Mirror Units:
1. Basis of Design Product: Model 740 by Bradley; 24-inches x 30-inches high.
2. Stainless Steel Framed Mirror Units: Fabricate frame with angle shapes of not less than 18 gauge, with square welded corners mitered and ground smooth. Provide with bright polished finish.
3. Locations: At each lavatory in each Toilet Room, and as otherwise indicated. Provide tilt mirror with fully enclosed back at one lavatory in each toilet room, for use by the disabled and handicapped.
4. Mountings: Concealed type, manufacturer's standard.
5. Mounting Height: 40-inches A.F.F. to bottom of mirror.

E. Sanitary Napkin Dispenser:
1. Basis of Design Product: Model 4722-15 by Bradley.
2. Stainless Steel Units: Fabricate frame with angle shapes, with square welded corners mitered and ground smooth. Provide with satin finish.
3. Locations: At each toilet stall in each Women's Toilet Room, and as otherwise indicated.
4. Mountings: Manufacturer's standard.
5. Mounting Height: As indicated on drawings.

F. Toilet Tissue Dispenser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Model 5402 by Bradley.
2. Material: Stainless steel.
3. Finish: Smooth, No.4, satin finish on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
4. Spindle: Holds 2 Rolls up to 5.25" diameter; extra roll drops when first is depleted.
5. Configuration and Location: As indicated on Drawings.

G. Soap Dispenser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Model 6562 by Bradley.
2. Material: Stainless steel.
3. Finish: Smooth, No.4, satin finish on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
4. Valve Type: Push-In valve.
5. Configuration and Location: As indicated on Drawings.

H. Hand Dryer:
1. Product: Xlerator.
2. Model: XL-GR.
3. Finish: Textured Graphite.
4. Activation: Automatic Sensor Operated.
5. Configuration and Location: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate Units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.

B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.

B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 104413

FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section includes fire protection cabinets for portable fire extinguishers

B. Related sections include Division 10 Section "Fire Extinguishers".

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.

2. Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size 6 by 6 inches square.

D. Maintenance Data: For fire protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Meeting Records: Minutes of pre-installation conference.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Pre installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to fire protection cabinets including, but not limited to, schedules and coordination requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

C. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.2 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for fire protection cabinets is based on "Architectural Series" by Larsen's Manufacturing Company. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. JL Industries, Inc.
2. Potter Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.

B. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

C. Cabinet Construction: Rated where required in rated walls.

D. Cabinet Material: Enameled-steel sheet.

E. Recessed Cabinet:

1. Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.
2. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend) of 114 to 5/16 inch.

F. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

G. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

H. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.

I. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).

J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1. Provide projecting lever handle with earn-action latch.
2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

K. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure tire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
2. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
3. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard alarm that actuates when tire-protection cabinet door is opened and that is powered by low voltage, complete with transformer.

L. Finishes:

1. Stainless Steel: No. 4 finish.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

1. Weld joints and grind smooth.

2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.

4. Install door locks at factory.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.

1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.

2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with comers mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, grease, mill scale, rust, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond using manufacturer's standard methods.

B. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pre treating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of2 mils.

2.6 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.

B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.

1. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.

2. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

3. Directional Satin Finish: No.4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

Prepare recesses for recessed fire protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Fire Protection Cabinets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of cabinet.

B. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi-recessed fire protection cabinets.
2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire protection cabinets, square and plumb.

C. Identification: Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

C. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 104416

FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 10 Section "Fire Extinguisher Cabinets".

2. Division 23 Section "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods" for fire extinguishing systems provided as part of commercial-kitchen exhaust hoods.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. NFP A Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFP A 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers".

B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 COORDINATION

Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace

fire extinguishers that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
2. Warranty Period: 6 (Six) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
    b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    c. Potter Roemer LLC.
2. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFP A 10, Appendix B.

B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 3-A: 40-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with mono ammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled steel container.

### 2.2 MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.

B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
2. Orientation: Vertical.

C. Location: Where fire extinguishers are to be wall mounted without a cabinet.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

B. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.

B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

### 1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

H. Insulation: Class F.

I. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.

2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

# SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
2. Pipe loops and swing connections.
3. Alignment guides and anchors.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
    b. American BOA, Inc.
    c. Badger Industries, Inc.
    d. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
    e. Flex Pression Ltd.
    f. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    g. Flex-Weld, Inc.
    h. Flexicraft Industries.
    i. Flo Fab inc.
    j. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
    k. Mason Industries, Inc.
    l. Metraflex Company (The).
    m. Proco Products, Inc.
    n. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
    o. Tozen Corporation.
    p. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
    q. Unaflex.
    r. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
    s. Universal Metal Hose.
    t. WahlcoMetroflex.

3. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
4. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
5. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
6. Configuration: Single joint Single joint with base and double joint with base class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
7. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.

    a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
    b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
    c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

## 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

    a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
    b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
    c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

    a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
    b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

### 3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.

C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.

D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.

C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.

D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.

F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 220516

# SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

### 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.

2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

C. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

## 3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

# SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

# SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Bronze swing check valves.
4. Bronze gate valves.
5. Bronze globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
2. Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

## 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Kitz Corporation.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
c. Body Design: One piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Brass.
h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. DynaQuip Controls.
d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.

e. Hammond Valve.
f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
g. Jomar International, LTD.
h. Kitz Corporation.
i. Legend Valve.
j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
l. NIBCO INC.
m. Red-White Valve Corporation.
n. RuB Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Hammond Valve.
b. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
c. Legend Valve.
d. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Regular.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
   c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
   b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
   c. Body Design: One piece.
   d. Body Material: Bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded.
   f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
   g. Stem: Bronze.
   h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
   c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   d. Hammond Valve.
   e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
   f. Legend Valve.
   g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   h. NIBCO INC.
   i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
   j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
   b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
   c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
   d. Body Design: Two piece.
   e. Body Material: Bronze.
   f. Ends: Threaded.
   g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.

h. Stem: Bronze.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. DynaQuip Controls.
f. Hammond Valve.
g. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
i. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Two piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Bronze.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Regular.

## 2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Hammond Valve.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.

j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

## 2.5 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.

e. Hammond Valve.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Hammond Valve.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.

2.6 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
c. Hammond Valve.
d. Kitz Corporation.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
f. NIBCO INC.
g. Powell Valves.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
c. NIBCO INC.
d. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
2. Throttling Service: Globe ball, or butterfly valves.
3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.4 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

3.5 SANITARY-WASTE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

END OF SECTION 220523

# SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

M. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

## 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

# SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
4. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
5. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
6. Surface Pattern: Smooth pattern.
7. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
8. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Mounting Plates:

a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

4. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.3 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
   b. California Dynamics Corporation.
   c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
   d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
   e. Mason Industries, Inc.
   f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   g. Vibration Isolation.
   h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

   a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
   b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
   b. California Dynamics Corporation.
   c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
   d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
   e. Mason Industries, Inc.
   f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   g. Vibration Isolation.
   h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.

8. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.

    a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
    b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

## 2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.

a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

4. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
6. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
7. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
8. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.

a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

4. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.11 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
   b. California Dynamics Corporation.
   c. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
   d. Mason Industries, Inc.
   e. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   f. Vibration Isolation.
   g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
8. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
9. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
10. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 220548.13

# SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic hot-water piping.
2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
3. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
4. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
5. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
6. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having

jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.

2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
3. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
4. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

I. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK and NOMALOCK.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
    d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
    e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
6. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
c. Tee covers.
d. Flange and union covers.
e. End caps.
f. Beveled collars.
g. Valve covers.

h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

2.9 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Engineered Brass Company.
b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
c. McGuire Manufacturing.
d. Plumberex.
e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

## 3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER PREFORMED PIPE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

## 3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.10 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
3. Polyolefin: 3/4 inch thick.

B. Stormwater and Overflow: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
3. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

C. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
3. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.

D. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
3. Polyolefin: 1/2 inch thick.

E. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Mineral-fiber, preformed pipe insulation, Type I, 1-1/2 inches thick.

3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

2. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
4. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
4. Polyolefin: 2 inches thick.

C. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

## 3.15 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

## 3.16 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

## 3.17 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC: 30 mils thick.
2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.18 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

# SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

C. Any reference within the specifications referring to PEX piping shall be construed to describe PEX-a piping as manufactured by Uponor or equal.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.

C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

F. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:

1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.

H. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
2. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

## 2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight.
2. Include ends matching joining method.

B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

## 2.5 CPVC PIPING

A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.

1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80.
2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.

B. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.

C. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.

## 2.6 PEX TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 876, SDR 9 tubing.

B. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type or plastic ASTM F 2023 with copper, PEX A or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.

C. Manifold: shall not be used.

## 2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80.

B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.

C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

2.8 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.

1. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.

2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
   b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
   c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

3. Description:

   a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
   b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
   b. NIBCO Inc.
   c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

3. Description:

   a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
   b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
   c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
   d. Rubber O-ring.
   e. Union nut.

2.10 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    d. Jomar International.
    e. Matco-Norca.
    f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

3. Standard: ASSE 1079.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

3. Standard: ASSE 1079.
4. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
6. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    b. Calpico, Inc.
    c. Central Plastics Company.
    d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

3. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
5. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
6. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
7. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
    b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    e. Victaulic Company.

3. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
4. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
5. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
6. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
7. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

G. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.

H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

I. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

O. Install piping free of sags and bends.

P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

Q. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.

R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."

U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.

E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

H. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

I. Joints for PEX Piping: Join according to ASTM F 1807.

J. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

## 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:

1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

## 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

I. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.

5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

J. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.

K. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

L. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches.

M. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

N. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

O. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

    a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

        1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
        2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

    c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
3. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be one of the following:

1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
4. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
5. CPVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
7. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.
8. PEX tube, NPS 1 and smaller; fittings for PEX tube; and crimped joints.
9. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
5. CPVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
7. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L or ASTM B 88, Type M; grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
4. CPVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
5. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
6. PVC, Schedule 80; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

K. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be one of the following:

1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
2. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

END OF SECTION 221116

# SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Hose bibbs.
8. Wall hydrants.
9. Drain valves.
10. Water-hammer arresters.
11. Trap-seal primer valves.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14. Mark "NSF-pw" on plastic piping components.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers

1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
3. Body: Bronze.
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
5. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers

1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
4. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers

1. Standard: ASSE 1012.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Size: NPS 1/2.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers

1. Standard: ASSE 1013.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
3. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:

a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies

1. Standard: ASSE 1015.
2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
7. Accessories:

a. ValvesNPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
b. ValvesNPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

## 2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. Honeywell International Inc.
d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

3. Standard: ASSE 1003.
4. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
5. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
6. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

## 2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
   d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   e. Hammond Valve.
   f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   g. NIBCO Inc.
   h. Red-White Valve Corp.

3. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
4. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
5. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
6. Body: Copper alloy.
7. Port: Standard or full port.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
10. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
11. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Armstrong International, Inc.
   b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Honeywell International Inc.
   e. Legend Valve.
   f. Leonard Valve Company.
   g. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   h. Symmons Industries, Inc.
   i. TACO Incorporated.
   j. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
   k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

3. Standard: ASSE 1017.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.

6. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
7. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
8. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
9. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 deg F.
10. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong International, Inc.
    b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    c. Leonard Valve Company.
    d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Symmons Industries, Inc.

3. Standard: ASSE 1017.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psigminimum unless otherwise indicated.
5. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
6. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
7. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
8. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Piping Finish: Chrome plated.
11. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for recessed mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

## 2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:

    a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
    b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
    c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.

6. Drain: Pipe plug.

## 2.9 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Operation: Loose key.
4. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
6. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
9. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

B. Nonfreeze, Hot- and Cold-Water Wall Hydrants

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
3. Operation: Loose key.

4. Casing and Operating Rods: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamps.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
6. Outlet: Concealed.
7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
9. Vacuum Breaker:

    a. Nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
    b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

10. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

C. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants

1. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
2. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
3. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Operation: Loose key or wheel handle.
6. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
7. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

## 2.11 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## 2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Josam Company.
    c. MIFAB, Inc.
    d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    h. Watts Drainage Products.
    i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.

3. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
4. Type: Copper tube with piston.
5. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.13 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. MIFAB, Inc.
    b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

3. Standard: ASSE 1018.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
5. Body: Bronze.
6. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
7. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
8. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

3. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 minimum, trap makeup connection.
4. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
5. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

   1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
   2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
   3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.

   1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve water pressure-reducing valve solenoid valve and pump.

F. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.

G. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.

H. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

J. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

# SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Floor drains.
4. Roof flashing assemblies.
5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
6. Flashing materials.
7. Oil/Sand interceptors.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.

f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Body: Cast iron.
6. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
7. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
8. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
9. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
4. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
5. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
d. Tyler Pipe.
e. Watts Drainage Products.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
4. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
5. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
6. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
7. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    b. Oatey.
    c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
    h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.
4. Size: Same as connected branch.
5. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
6. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
9. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
10. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with set-screws or other device.
11. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
12. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
13. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
14. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    b. MIFAB, Inc.

c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
4. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
5. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
6. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, drilled-and-threaded brass plug.
7. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
8. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.
9. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Commercial Enameling Co.
b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
c. MIFAB, Inc.
d. Prier Products, Inc.
e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
g. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

3. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 with backwater valve.
4. Pattern: Floor Sanitary drain.
5. Body Material: Gray iron.
6. Seepage Flange: Required.
7. Anchor Flange: Required.
8. Clamping Device: Required.
9. Outlet: Bottom.
10. Backwater Valve: Drain-outlet type.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
13. Top Shape: Round.
14. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty.

15. Funnel: Not required.
16. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
17. Trap Material: Bronze.
18. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
19. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

## 2.4 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
    b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

3. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

    a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
    b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
    c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

B. Deep-Seal Traps

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

    a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

D. Air-Gap Fittings (Funnel Traps)

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

E. Sleeve Flashing Device

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

F. Stack Flashing Fittings

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

G. Vent Caps

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

## 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.

B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## 2.7 OIL/SAND INTERCEPTORS

A. Interceptors:

1. Cast-Iron or Steel Grease Interceptors:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

b. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1) Applied Chemical Technology, Incorporated.
2) Josam Company.
3) MIFAB, Inc.
4) Rockford Sanitary Systems, Inc.
5) Schier Products Company.
6) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
7) Tyler Pipe.
8) Watts Drainage Products.
9) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Plastic Oil/Sand Interceptors:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

b. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1) Ashland Trap Distribution Co.
2) Bio-Microbics, Inc.
3) Canplas LLC.
4) Schier Products Company.
5) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

3. Plumbing and Drainage Institute Seal: Not required.
4. Body Material: Plastic.
5. Interior Lining: Not required.
6. Exterior Coating: Not required.
7. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet.
8. Flow-Control Fitting: Required.
9. Operation: Manual cleaning.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.

B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:

a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.

3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

G. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

H. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.

I. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

J. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.

1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

K. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

L. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

M. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

N. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.

1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.

O. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.

## 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

## 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each grease interceptor.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

# SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Kohler Wellworth K-4406. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Capizzi.
d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
e. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
f. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
g. Kohler Co.

h. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
i. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
j. St. Thomas Creations.
k. TOTO USA, INC.
l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

3. Bowl:

a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Material: Vitreous china.
c. Type: Siphon jet.
d. Style: Flushometer valve.
e. Height: Standard.
f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
g. Water Consumption: 1.6 gal. per flush.
h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
i. Color: White.

4. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
5. Flushometer Valve: Sloan Royal or Zurn.
6. Toilet Seat: Church.

## 2.2 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS, ADA COMPLIANT

A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Kohler Highline K-4405. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Capizzi.
d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
e. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
f. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
g. Kohler Co.
h. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
i. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
j. St. Thomas Creations.
k. TOTO USA, INC.
l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

3. Bowl:

a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Material: Vitreous china.
c. Type: Siphon jet.
d. Style: Flushometer valve.
e. Height: Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
g. Water Consumption: 1.6 gal. per flush.
h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
i. Color: White.

4. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
5. Flushometer Valve: Sloan Royal or Zurn.

## 2.3 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Sloan Royal 100-1.6. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Coyne & Delany Co.
b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
c. Sloan Valve Company.
d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

3. Standard: ASSE 1037.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
6. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
7. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
8. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
9. Style: Exposed.
10. Consumption: 1.6 gal. per flush.
11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

B. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Sloan Crown 111-1.6. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Coyne & Delany Co.
b. Sloan Valve Company.
c. TOTO USA, INC.

3. Standard: ASSE 1037.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
6. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
7. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
8. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
9. Style: Exposed.
10. Consumption: 1.6 gal. per flush.
11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## 2.4 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Church 9500CT. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
c. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
d. Church Seats.
e. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
f. Kohler Co.
g. Olsonite Seat Co.
h. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.
i. Sperzel of Lexington.
j. TOTO USA, INC.
k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

3. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
4. Material: Plastic.
5. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
6. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
7. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
8. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
9. Seat Cover: Not required.
10. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

# SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Urinals.
2. Flushometer valves.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, siphon jet, accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Kohler Bardon K-4991-ET. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Standard America.
    b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    c. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
    d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    e. Kohler Co.
    f. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    g. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.

3. Fixture:

a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Material: Vitreous china.
c. Type: Siphon jet with extended shields.
d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
e. Water Consumption: Low.
f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4; top.
g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2; back.
h. Color: White.

4. Waste Fitting:

a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
b. Size: NPS 2.

5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

## 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Sloan Royal 186-0.5 HEU Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Coyne & Delany Co.
b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
c. Sloan Valve Company.
d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

3. Standard: ASSE 1037.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
6. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
7. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

B. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Sloan Crown 186-0.5 HEU. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Coyne & Delany Co.
   b. Sloan Valve Company.
   c. TOTO USA, INC.

3. Standard: ASSE 1037.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
5. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
6. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
7. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
5. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

# SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.
3. Supports.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory LC & HLC: Oval, vitreous china, undercounter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Kohler Co.
c. TOTO USA, INC.
d. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
c. Nominal Size: Oval, 22 by 14 inches.
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
f. Color: White.
g. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

3. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.

## 2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory HL: Wheelchair, vitreous china, wall mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Kohler Co.
c. Sloan Valve Company.
d. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: Slab or wheelchair.
c. Nominal Size: Rectangular, 27 by 20 inches.
d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 2-inch centers.
e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
f. Color: White.
g. Mounting: For concealed-arm carrier.

3. Faucet: Solid-Brass, Manually Operated Faucets.
4. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons.
5. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

2.3 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type, single-control mixing, commercial, solid-brass valve.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Bradley Corporation.
c. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
d. Delta Faucet Company.
e. Just Manufacturing.
f. Kohler Co.
g. Speakman Company.
h. T&S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Maximum Flow: 0.25 gal. per metering cycle.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Valve Handle(s): Single lever.
11. Spout: Rigid, gooseneck type.
12. Spout Outlet: Aerator Spray.
13. Operation: Compression, manual.
14. Drain: grid.

2.4 SUPPORTS

A. Type II Lavatory Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
b. Josam Company.
c. MIFAB, Inc.
d. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.

e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

2.5 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 3/8.
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.6 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between lavatories and counters and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

# SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Service sinks.
3. Utility sinks.
4. Handwash sinks.
5. Sink faucets.
6. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
7. Supply fittings.
8. Waste fittings.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins: Floor mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
b. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
d. Mustee, E. L., & Sons, Inc.
e. Swan Corporation (The).
f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

3. Fixture:

a. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.6.
b. Material: Cast polymer.
c. Nominal Size: 24 by 36 by 10 inches.
d. Tiling Flange: On two sides.
e. Rim Guard: On all top surfaces.
f. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 outlet.

4. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.

5. Faucet:

a. Number Required: One.
b. Mounting: Wall.
c. Handles: Two lever.
d. Hose Connection: Yes.
e. Pail Hook: Yes.
f. Vacuum breaker: Yes.
g. Construction: Commercial solid brass.

## 2.2 COUNTERTOP SINKS

A. Sinks K**S**: Stainless steel, countertop mounted, double compartment.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Elkay LR3322PD. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Advance Tabco.
b. Eagle Group; Foodservice Equipment Division.
c. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
d. Griffin Products, Inc.
e. Just Manufacturing.

3. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B125.2.
b. Type: Countertop Mounted.

c. Number of Compartments: Two.
d. Metal Thickness: 18 gauge, type 304 stainless steel.
e. Compartment: 33”x22”x9-5/8”.

1) Drain: Grid with NPS 1/2 tailpiece and twist drain.
2) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.

4. Faucet(s): .

a. Number Required: One.
b. Mounting: On ledge.

5. Supply Fittings:

a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.

1) Operation: Wheel handle.
2) Risers: NPS 1/2,ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

6. Waste Fittings:

a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
b. Trap(s):

1) Size: NPS 1/2.
2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
3) Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

c. Continuous Waste:

1) Size: NPS 1/2.
2) Material: Chrome-plated, 0.032-inch-thick brass tube.

7. Mounting: On counter with sealant.

## 2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Sink Faucets: for KS. Manual type, single-lever-handle mixing valve.

1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets:

   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   b. Basis-of-Design Product: Elkay LK3001. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

      1) American Standard America.
      2) Bradley Corporation.
      3) Chicago Faucets.
      4) Delta Faucet Company.
      5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      6) GROHE America, Inc.
      7) Just Manufacturing.
      8) Kohler Co.
      9) Moen Incorporated.
      10) Speakman Company.
      11) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
      12) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Sink, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Swing, round tubular.
11. Spout Outlet: Swivel Aerator.

## 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange. Option – Stainless steel braided supply hoses.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Wheel handle.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 1/2
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.

B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.

E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.

1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

# SECTION 224716 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

A. Pressure Water Coolers: Flush to wall.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Elkay LNTEM8K, subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    b. Halsey Taylor.
    c. Haws Corporation.
    d. Larco Inc.
    e. Tri Palm International, LLC; Oasis Brand.
    f. Tri Palm International, LLC; Sunroc Brand.

3. Standards:

    a. Comply with NSF 61.
    b. Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Comply with ADA requirements.

4. Cabinet: All stainless steel.
5. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
6. Control: Push button.
7. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
8. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
9. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
10. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
11. Cooling System: Electric, with precooler, hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.

    a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

12. Capacities and Characteristics:

    a. Cooled Water: 7.5 gph.
    b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F.
    c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F
    d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.

C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

## 3.5 CLEANING

A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224716

# SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

### 1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

H. Insulation: Class F.

I. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.

2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

# SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.

d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
4. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
5. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
6. Surface Pattern: Smooth pattern.
7. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
8. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Isolation.
h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Mounting Plates:

a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

4. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.3 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

    a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
    b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.

6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
8. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.

    a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
    b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

## 2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
   b. California Dynamics Corporation.
   c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
   d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
   e. Mason Industries, Inc.
   f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   g. Vibration Isolation.
   h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.

   a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
   c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

4. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
6. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
7. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
8. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
   b. California Dynamics Corporation.
   c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
   d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
   e. Mason Industries, Inc.
   f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
   g. Vibration Isolation.
   h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.

    a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
    b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.

b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
4. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.11 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
d. Mason Industries, Inc.
e. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
f. Vibration Isolation.
g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

3. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
8. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
9. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
10. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

# SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:

a. Constant-volume air systems.
b. Variable-air-volume systems.

2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

B. Certified TAB reports.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect.

D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.

7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

## 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish.

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

## 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:

a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.

4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-

motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.

a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

## 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.9 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.

## 3.10 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

## 3.11 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.

11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
4. Balancing stations.
5. Position of balancing devices.

## 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

# SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities

having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
   b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
   c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
   e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.

b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.

D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.9 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
   c. Compac Corporation; 120.
   d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
   b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
      2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.

b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
2) GEMCO; R-150.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) GEMCO.
2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

## 2.11 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

## 3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment.

Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1

inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

## 3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.7 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

## 3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.

F. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

H. Exposed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

I. Exposed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

## 3.11 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board, 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 30 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch-Deep Corrugations: 0.040 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

# SECTION 230923.12 - CONTROL DAMPERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes control dampers and actuators.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control dampers and actuators, including the following.

a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
b. Face velocity at project design and minimum airflow conditions.
c. Pressure drop across damper at project design and minimum airflow conditions.
d. AMCA 500D damper installation arrangement used to calculate and schedule pressure drop, as applicable to installation.
e. Maximum close-off pressure.
f. Leakage airflow at maximum system pressure differential (fan close-off pressure).
g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to size products where indicated as delegated design.

C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.

D. Selection Criteria:

1. Control dampers shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:

a. Supply Air: 1.5”W.G.
b. Return Air: 1.5”W.G..
c. Outdoor Air: 1.5”W.G..
d. Mixed Air: 1.5”W.G..
e. Exhaust Air: 1.5”W.G..

2. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:

a. Supply Air: Open.
b. Return Air: Open.
c. Outdoor Air: Close.
d. Mixed Air: Close.
e. Exhaust Air: Close.

3. Select modulating dampers for a pressure drop of 2 percent of fan total static pressure unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed blade configuration.
2. Factory assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

B. Rectangular Dampers with Aluminum Airfoil Blades:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Greenheck.

2. Performance:

a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
b. Pressure Drop: 0.05-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
c. Velocity: Up to 6000 fpm.

d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

3. Construction:

a. Frame:

1) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles,0.07 inch thick.
2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flange(s). Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
3) Width not less than 5 inches.

b. Blades:

1) Hollow, airfoil, extruded aluminum.
2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
3) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 aluminum, 0.07 inch thick.
4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

c. Seals:

1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl, or plastic composite.
2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.

d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.
e. Bearings:

1) Molded synthetic or stainless-steel sleeve mounted in frame.
2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

f. Linkage:

1) Concealed in frame.
2) Constructed of aluminum and plated or stainless steel.
3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

g. Transition:

1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.

4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments:

1) Provide anodized finish for aluminum surfaces in contact with airstream. Anodized finish shall be a minimum of 0.0007 inch thick.
2) Axles, damper linkage, and hardware shall be constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

4. Airflow Measurement:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1) Trane

2) Automated Logic.

b. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow monitoring.
c. Accuracy shall be within 5 percent of the actual flow rate between the range of minimum and design airflow. For applications with a large variation in range between the minimum and design airflow, configure the damper sections and flow measurement assembly as required to comply with the stated accuracy over the entire modulating range.
d. Provide a straightening device as part of the flow measurement assembly to achieve the specified accuracy with configuration indicated.
e. Suitable for operation in untreated and unfiltered air.
f. Provide temperature and altitude compensation and correction to maintain accuracy over temperature range encountered at site altitude.
g. Provide automatic zeroing feature.

5. Airflow Control:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1) Trane.

2) Automated Logic.

b. Where indicated, provide damper assembly with integral airflow measurement and control.
c. A factory-furnished and -calibrated controller shall be programmed, in nonvolatile EPROM, with application-specific airflow set point and range.
d. The controller and actuator shall communicate to control the desired airflow.

e. The controller shall receive a zero- to 10-V dc input signal and report a zero- to 20-mA output signal that is proportional to the airflow.
f. Airflow measurement and control range shall be suitable for operation between 150 to 2000 fpm.
g. Ambient Operating Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 140 deg F.
h. Ambient Operating Humidity Range: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.
i. Provide unit with control transformer rated for not less than 85 VA. Provide transformer with primary and secondary protection and primary disconnecting means. Coordinate requirements with field power connection.
j. Provide screw terminals for interface to field wiring.
k. Factory mount electronics within a NEMA 250, Type 1 painted steel enclosure.

C. Rectangular Dampers with Steel Airfoil Blades:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Greenheck.

b. Ruskin.

2. Performance:

a. Leakage: AMCA 511, Class 1A. Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
b. Pressure Drop: 0.06-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
c. Velocity: Up to 6000 fpm.
d. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

3. Construction:

a. Frame:

1) Material: ASTM A 653/A 653M galvanized-steel profiles, 0.06 inch thick.
2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flanges. Mating face shall be a minimum of 1 inch.
3) Width not less than 5 inches.

b. Blades:

1) Hollow, airfoil, galvanized steel.
2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
3) Material: ASTM A 653/A 653M galvanized steel, 0.05 inch thick.

4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

c. Seals:

1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl, or plastic composite.
2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.

d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.

e. Bearings:

1) Stainless steel mounted in frame.
2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

f. Linkage:

1) Concealed in frame.
2) Constructed of aluminum and plated or stainless steel.
3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

g. Transition:

1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments:

1) Provide epoxy finish for surfaces in contact with airstream.
2) Axles, damper linkage, and hardware shall be constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

D. Rectangular Dampers with Aluminum Flat Blades:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Greenheck.

b. Ruskin.

2. Performance:

    a. Leakage: Leakage shall not exceed 3.2 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
    b. Pressure Drop: 0.07-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
    c. Velocity: Up to 2000 fpm.
    d. Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
    e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length, not to exceed 3-in. wg.
    f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

3. Construction:

    a. Frame:

        1) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles,0.12 inch thick.
        2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flanges.
        3) Width not less than 5 inches.

    b. Blades:

        1) Flat blades of extruded aluminum.
        2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
        3) Material: ASTM B 211, Alloy 6063 T5 extruded-aluminum profiles,0.12 inch thick.
        4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
        5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

    c. Seals:

        1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached extruded silicone, vinyl or plastic composite.
        2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.

    d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.
    e. Bearings:

        1) Molded-synthetic sleeve, mounted in frame.
        2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

    f. Linkage:

        1) Concealed in frame.
        2) Constructed of plated or stainless steel.
        3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

g. Transition:

1) For round and flat oval duct applications, provide damper assembly with integral transitions to mate to adjoining field connection.
2) Factory mount damper in a sleeve with a close transition to mate to field connection.
3) Damper size and sleeve shall be connection size plus 2 inches.
4) Sleeve length shall be not less than 12 inches for dampers without jackshafts and shall be not less than 16 inches for dampers with jackshafts.
5) Sleeve material shall match adjacent duct.

h. Additional Corrosion Protection for Corrosive Environments:

1) Provide anodized finish for aluminum surfaces in contact with airstream. Anodized finish shall be a minimum of 0.0007 inch thick.
2) Axles, damper linkage, and hardware shall be constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

E. Rectangular Dampers with Steel Flat Blades:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Greenheck.

b. Ruskin.

2. Performance:

a. Leakage: Leakage shall not exceed 4.8 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-in. wg differential static pressure.
b. Pressure Drop: 0.1-in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested according to AMCA 500-D, figure 5.3.
c. Velocity: Up to 1500 fpm.
d. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
e. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length, not to exceed 4-in. wg.
f. Damper shall have AMCA seal for both air leakage and air performance.

3. Construction:

a. Frame:

1) Material: Galvanized or stainless steel,0.06 inch thick.
2) Hat-shaped channel with integral flanges.
3) Width not less than 5 inches.

b. Blades:

1) Flat blades with multiple grooves positioned axially for reinforcement.
2) Parallel or opposed blade configuration as required by application.
3) Material: Galvanized or stainless steel, 0.06 inch thick.
4) Width not to exceed 6 inches.
5) Length as required by close-off pressure, not to exceed 48 inches.

c. Seals:

1) Blades: Replaceable, mechanically attached, PVC-coated polyester.
2) Jambs: Stainless steel, compression type.

d. Axles: 0.5-inch-diameter plated or stainless steel, mechanically attached to blades.

e. Bearings:

1) Molded-synthetic sleeve, mounted in frame.
2) Where blade axles are installed in vertical position, provide thrust bearings.

f. Linkage:

1) Concealed in frame.
2) Constructed of plated or stainless steel.
3) Hardware: Stainless steel.

## 2.3 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

A. Actuators shall operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.

B. Actuators shall produce sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators shall be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.

C. The total damper area operated by an actuator shall not exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.

D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly shall operate in unison.

E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.

F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.

G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.

H. Select actuators to fail in desired position in the event of a power failure.

I. Actuator Fail Positions: As indicated below:

1. Exhaust Air: Close.
2. Outdoor Air: Close.
3. Supply Air: Open.
4. Return Air: Open.

## 2.4 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS

A. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.

B. Voltage:

1. Actuator shall deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
2. Actuator shall function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.

C. Construction:

1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
2. 100 up to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft-hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.
3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.

D. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring return actuators shall be easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
2. Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.

E. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.

F. Modulating Actuators:

1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
2. Control Input Signal:

a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.

b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10- or 2- to 10-V dc and 4- to 20-mA signals.
c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink or source controller.
d. Programmable Multi-Function:

1) Control input, position feedback, and running time shall be factory or field programmable.
2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

G. Position Feedback:

1. Equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
2. Equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

H. Fail-Safe:

1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.

I. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

J. Damper Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

K. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

L. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.

M. Stroke Time:

1. Operate damper from fully closed to fully open within 60 seconds.
2. Operate damper from fully open to fully closed within 60 seconds.
3. Move damper to failed position within 5 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
5. Actuators operating in smoke control systems comply with governing code and NFPA requirements.

N. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.

B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.

C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.

E. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.

2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

G. Corrosive Environments:

1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Laboratory exhaust airstreams.
    b. Process exhaust airstreams.

3. Use Type 316 stainless-steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
4. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
5. Where actuators are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

## 3.2 ELECTRIC POWER

A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.

B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."

C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

## 3.3 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Install smooth transitions, not exceeding 15 degrees, to dampers smaller than adjacent duct. Install transitions as close to damper as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Consult manufacturer for recommended clearance.

B. Clearance:

1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
2. Install dampers with at least 24 inches of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access.

C. Service Access:

1. Dampers and actuators shall be accessible for visual inspection and service.
2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

D. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions. Install supplementary structural steel reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory support alone cannot handle loading.

E. Attach actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.

F. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

G. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

H. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."Section 16075 "Electrical Identification."

I. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper and on face of ceiling where damper is concealed above ceiling.

## 3.4 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

A. Control-Damper Checkout:

1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
3. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
4. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
5. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
6. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
8. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

3.5 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:

A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.

B. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.

C. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

# SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.

### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: More than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

C. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

D. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.

2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
4. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. OmegaFlex, Inc.

b. Parker Hannifin Corporation.
c. Titeflex.
d. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.

2. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Coating: PE with flame retardant.

a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

4. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
5. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
6. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
7. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.

C. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 837, Type G.

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.

a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.

3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.

D. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.

1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.

a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.

c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
d. Outlet shall be threaded or suitable for welded connection.
e. Tracer wire connection.
f. Ultraviolet shield.
g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.

a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
b. Outlet shall be threaded or suitable for welded connection.
c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
d. Factory-connected anode.
e. Tracer wire connection.
f. Ultraviolet shield.
g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

C. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   e. Perfection Corporation.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.

4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   e. Perfection Corporation.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   e. Perfection Corporation.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.

4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. Lee Brass Company.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.

3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
   b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   c. Perfection Corporation.

2. Body: PE.

3. Ball: PE.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: 80 psig.
8. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Include plastic valve extension.

11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

H. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

A. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
b. Eclipse Innovative Thermal Technologies.
c. Goyen Valve Corp.
d. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
e. Parker Hannifin Corporation.
f. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.

3. Pilot operated.

4. Body: Brass or aluminum.
5. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
7. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
8. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
9. Normally closed.
10. Visual position indicator.

## 2.6 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

   a. Vanguard Valves, Inc.

3. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Maximum Operating Pressure: 5 psig.
5. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
6. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
7. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
8. Threaded end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.
9. Wall mounting bracket with bubble level indicator.

B. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

   a. Pacific Seismic Products, Inc.

3. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig.
5. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
6. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
7. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
8. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
9. Level indicator.
10. End Connections: Threaded for valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Actaris.
    b. American Meter Company.
    c. Eclipse Innovative Thermal Technologies.
    d. Fisher Control Valves & Instruments; a brand of Emerson Process Management.
    e. Invensys.
    f. Itron Gas.
    g. Maxitrol Company.
    h. Richards Industries.

3. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.

4. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
5. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
6. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
7. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
8. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
9. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
10. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
11. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
12. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
13. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 10 psig.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

    a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
    b. Eaton Corporation.
    c. Harper Wyman Co.
    d. Maxitrol Company.
    e. SCP, Inc.

3. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.

4. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
5. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
6. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
9. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.

## 2.8 DIELECTRIC UNIONS

A. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   c. Central Plastics Company.
   d. HART Industrial Unions, LLC.
   e. Jomar Valve.
   f. Matco-Norca.
   g. Watts; a Watts Water Technologies company.
   h. Wilkins.
   i. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
   b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
   c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## 2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.

C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.

D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

E. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.

F. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

G. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

## 3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.

1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

P. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

Q. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

R. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment.

S. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

T. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.

U. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing or copper connector.

B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.

C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.

E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

## 3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

## 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/8: Maximum span, 48 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 3/4 and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

## 3.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.9 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:

1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.

B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

C. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.

D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

## 3.10 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
2. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
3. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

D. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

E. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

## 3.11 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.

B. Underground: PE valves.

## 3.12 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

B. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231123

# SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-22:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 185 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 325 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 325 psig.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.

B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

1. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.

6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
8. Manual operator.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

H. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

I. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

## 2.3 REFRIGERANTS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

B. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

F. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

G. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gage taps at strainers if they are not an integral part of strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

## 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

## 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

    a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

# SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.
6. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
3. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
4. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"

1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations for selecting hangers and supports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.

e. Access panels.
f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and

Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Lindab Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
c. SEMCO Incorporated.
d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger Than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction

methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.

10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m) and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## 2.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Hilti Corp.
4. Kinetics Noise Control.
5. Loos & Co.; Cableware Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.

D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.

E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.

F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

## 3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.

10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

## 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

B. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

C. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

D. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.

d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

E. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
2. PVC-Coated Ducts:

a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminumor galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

F. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.

b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

G. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

# SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Smoke dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Duct-mounted access doors.
9. Flexible connectors.
10. Flexible ducts.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control-damper installations.
d. Fire-damper and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and painted finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.

6. Nailor Industries Inc.
7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Pottorff.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc.

C. Description: Gravity balanced.

D. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.

E. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

F. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

G. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum noncombustible, tear-resistant, neoprene-coated fiberglass with sealed edges.

H. Blade Action: Parallel.

I. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.

J. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.

K. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

L. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

M. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

N. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.

    a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.

6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
8. Screen Type: Insect.
9. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    e. Nailor Industries Inc.
    f. Pottorff.
    g. Ruskin Company.
    h. Trox USA Inc.
    i. Vent Products Company, Inc.

3. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:

    a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    b. Mitered and welded corners.
    c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

6. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
8. Bearings:

    a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    e. Pottorff.
    f. Ruskin Company.
    g. Trox USA Inc.
    h. Vent Products Company, Inc.

3. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch-thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
    e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch-thick extruded aluminum.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
8. Bearings:

    a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

D. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
6. McGill AirFlow LLC.
7. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
10. Pottorff.
11. Ruskin Company.
12. Vent Products Company, Inc.
13. Young Regulator Company.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
7. Pottorff.
8. Prefco; Perfect Air Control, Inc.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

D. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

E. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

F. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch or 0.39 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

H. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

I. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

J. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

K. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

L. Heat-Responsive Device: , replaceable link and switch package, factory installed, 165 deg F and 212 deg F rated.

## 2.7 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

D. Material: Galvanized steel.

E. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.8 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. METALAIRE, Inc.
5. SEMCO Incorporated.
6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

D. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

E. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

F. Vane Construction: Double wall.

## 2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
4. Elgen Manufacturing.
5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
7. McGill AirFlow LLC.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. Pottorff.
10. Ventfabrics, Inc.
11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

   a. Double wall, rectangular.
   b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
   c. Vision panel.
   d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
   e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

   a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
   b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.

c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches.
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

D. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.10 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.

C. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

D. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.

E. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

F. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.

G. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

G. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.12 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

C. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.

3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

D. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

E. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive.

## 2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.

H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

J. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

N. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with liquid adhesive plus tape.

P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

# SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Louver face diffusers.
3. Linear bar diffusers.
4. Adjustable bar registers and grilles.
5. Fixed face registers and grilles.
6. Linear bar grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.

c. Carnes.
d. Hart & Cooley Inc.
e. Krueger.
f. METALAIRE, Inc.
g. Nailor Industries Inc.
h. Price Industries.
i. Titus.
j. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
4. Material: Aluminum.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches or 12 by 12 inches.
7. Face Style: Four cone.
8. Mounting: T-bar.
9. Pattern: Adjustable.
10. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.
11. Accessories:

a. Equalizing grid.
b. Plaster ring.
c. Safety chain.
d. Wire guard.
e. Sectorizing baffles.
f. Operating rod extension.

B. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
c. Carnes.
d. METALAIRE, Inc.
e. Nailor Industries Inc.
f. Price Industries.
g. Titus.
h. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
4. Material: Aluminum.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. Mounting: Surface.
7. Pattern: One-way & Adjustable core style.
8. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

9. Accessories:

    a. Square to round neck adaptor.
    b. Adjustable pattern vanes.
    c. Throw reducing vanes.
    d. Equalizing grid.
    e. Plaster ring.
    f. Safety chain.
    g. Wire guard.
    h. Sectorizing baffles.
    i. Operating rod extension.

## 2.2 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Bar Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Air Research Diffuser Products, Inc.
    b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    c. Carnes.
    d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
    e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    f. Krueger.
    g. METALAIRE, Inc.
    h. Nailor Industries Inc.
    i. Price Industries.
    j. Titus.
    k. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
4. Material: Aluminum.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. Narrow Core Spacing Arrangement: 1/8-inch-thick blades spaced 1/4 inch apart, zero-degree deflection.
7. Wide Core Spacing Arrangement: 1/8-inch-thick blades spaced 1/2 inch apart, zero-degree deflection.
8. Wide Core Spacing Arrangement: 3/16-inch-thick blades spaced 1/2 inch apart, zero-degree deflection.
9. Pencil-Proof Core Spacing Arrangement: 3/16-inch-thick blades spaced 7/16 inch apart, zero-degree deflection.
10. One-Way Deflection Vanes: Extruded construction fixed louvers with removable core.
11. Frame: 1 inch wide.
12. Accessories: Directional vanes.

B. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Air Research Diffuser Products, Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. Hart & Cooley Inc.
   e. Krueger.
   f. METALAIRE, Inc.
   g. Nailor Industries Inc.
   h. Price Industries.
   i. Titus.
   j. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
4. Material - Shell: Aluminum, noninsulated.
5. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
6. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
7. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
8. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
9. Slot Width: 1-1/2 inches.
10. Number of Slots: Two.
11. Length: 48 inches.
12. Accessories: T-bar slot.

## 2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
   e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
   f. Krueger.
   g. METALAIRE, Inc.
   h. Nailor Industries Inc.
   i. Price Industries.

j. Titus.
k. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
6. Core Construction: Removable.
7. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
8. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
9. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
10. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
11. Accessories:

a. Rear-blade gang operator.
b. Filter.

B. Adjustable Bar Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
c. Carnes.
d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
f. Krueger.
g. METALAIRE, Inc.
h. Nailor Industries Inc.
i. Price Industries.
j. Titus.
k. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
6. Core Construction: Removable.
7. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
8. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
9. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

C. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    c. Carnes.
    d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
    e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    f. Krueger.
    g. Nailor Industries Inc.
    h. Price Industries.
    i. Titus.
    j. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
6. Core Construction: Removable.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
10. Accessory: Filter.

D. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    c. Carnes.
    d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
    e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    f. Krueger.
    g. Nailor Industries Inc.
    h. Price Industries.
    i. Titus.
    j. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
6. Core Construction: Removable.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: Lay in.
9. Accessory: Filter.

E. Linear Bar Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
   e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
   f. Krueger.
   g. Nailor Industries Inc.
   h. Price Industries.
   i. Titus.
   j. Tuttle & Bailey.

3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
6. Distribution plenum.

   a. Internal insulation.
   b. Inlet damper.

7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: Lay in.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels,

locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

# SECTION 236200 - PACKAGED COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Compressor and condenser units, air cooled, 6 to 120 tons (21 to 422 kW).

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each compressor and condenser unit.

B. Shop Drawings: For compressor and condenser units.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For compressor and condenser units indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
3. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
4. Indicate compliance with "Performance Requirements" Article.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Startup service reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

C. Coordinate installation of steel dunnage and metal work platforms. These items are specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing," and Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."

D. Coordinate location of piping and electrical rough-ins.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of compressor and condenser units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 1 years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period (Compressor Only): Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period (Components Other Than Compressor): 1 years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period (Condenser Coil Only): 1 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation.

B. Fabricate and label refrigeration system in accordance with ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 34.

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS, AIR COOLED, 6 TO 120 TONS (21 TO 422 kW)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier Global Corporation.
2. Daikin Applied.

3. Trane.
4. YORK; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.

B. Description: Factory assembled and tested, air cooled; consisting of casing, compressors, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.

C. Compressor:

1. Hermetic scroll compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and backseating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.

a. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling.

2. Hermetic or semihermetic rotary-screw compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and backseating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.

a. Capacity Control: On-off compressor cycling.

D. Refrigerant: R-407C or R-410A.

E. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil, including subcooling circuit and backseating liquid-line service access valve.

1. Factory pressure test coils, then dehydrate by drawing a vacuum and fill with a holding charge of nitrogen or refrigerant.
2. Provide factory-applied baked epoxy anti-corrosion coating to assembled coil.

F. Condenser Fans: Propeller-type vertical discharge; either directly or belt driven. Include the following:

1. Permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors.
2. Separate motor for each fan.
3. Dynamically and statically balanced fan assemblies.

G. Operating and safety controls include the following:

1. Manual-reset, high-pressure cutout switches.
2. Automatic-reset, low-pressure cutout switches.
3. Low-oil-pressure cutout switch.
4. Compressor-winding thermostat cutout switch.
5. Three-leg, compressor-overload protection.
6. Control transformer.
7. Magnetic contactors for compressor and condenser fan motors.
8. Timer to prevent excessive compressor cycling.

H. Accessories:

1. Electronic programmable thermostat to control compressor and condenser unit and its associated evaporator fan.
2. Low-Ambient Controller:

a. Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch.
b. Controls condenser fan speed to permit operation down to minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch.

3. Gauge Panel: Package with refrigerant circuit suction and discharge gauges.
4. Hot-gas bypass kit.
5. Part-winding-start timing relay, circuit breakers, and contactors.
6. Reversing valve.
7. Non-fused disconnect switch, factory mounted and wired, for single external electrical power connection. See Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
8. Low-noise fans.
9. 115 V ac convenience, ground-fault circuit interrupter receptacle in weatherproof enclosure.
10. Vibration isolation resilient mounts.
11. Security grilles.

I. Unit Casings: Designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls and with removable panels for required access to compressors, controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives. Additional features include the following:

1. Steel, galvanized or zinc coated, for exposed casing surfaces; treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating.

a. Corrosion Resistance: 500-hour salt spray test, in accordance with ASTM B117.

2. Perimeter base rail with forklift slots and lifting holes to facilitate rigging.
3. Gasketed control panel door.
4. Condenser coil hail guard.

J. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Compressor and Condenser Unit: See drawings for capacity and electrical requirements.

2. Refrigerant Connections:

a. Liquid Pipe Size: 1/2".
b. Suction Pipe Size: 1-3/8”.

3. Compressors:

a. Number of Compressors: Minimum 2.

## 2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Performance Ratings: Certify capacity performance ratings of compressor and condenser units in accordance with AHRI 340/360.

B. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Factory test sound-power-level ratings in accordance with AHRI 270.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of compressor and condenser units.

B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where compressor and condenser units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated.

B. Install roof-mounting units on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

C. Install roof-mounting units on steel dunnage specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" or Section 055000 Metal Fabrications, or on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install compressor and condenser units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

E. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

F. Loose Components: Install piping specialties, electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect precharged refrigerant tubing to unit's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing so it does not interfere with access to unit. Install furnished accessories.

D. Connect refrigerant piping to air-cooled compressor and condenser units; maintain required access to unit. Install furnished field-mounted accessories. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."

## 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

## 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:

a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.

B. Start unit in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.

C. Measure and record airflow and air temperature rise over coils.

D. Verify operation of condenser capacity control device.

E. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections prevent vibration transmission to structure.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor operation and unit operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Verify manufacturer's required airflow over coils.

C. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections prevent vibration transmission to structure.

D. Compressor and condenser units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain compressor and condenser units.

END OF SECTION 236200

# SECTION 237313.16 - INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulated, double-wall-casing, indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that are factory assembled using multiple section components, including the following:

1. Casings.
2. Fans, drives, and motors.
3. Coils.
4. Air filtration.
5. Dampers.
6. Sound attenuators.
7. Humidifiers.
8. Air-to-air energy recovery.
9. Air blender.
10. Diffuser.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, semi-custom air handling unit.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, semi-custom air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation, supports, indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators, supports, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Startup service reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 1 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.

C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

F. Structural Performance: Casing panels shall be self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative 8-inch wg (2000 Pa) of internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch (0.0042 mm/mm) of panel span.

2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS: see drawings for additional details.

A. Supply Fan: See drawings for capacities and characteristics.

B. Electric Heating Coil: See drawings for details.

C. Cooling Coil:

1. Number of Rows: 4.

2. Refrigerant:

a. Refrigerant Type: R-410A.

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier Global Corporation.
2. Daikin Applied.
3. Trane.
4. YORK; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.

2.4 UNIT CASINGS

A. Frame: Modular and providing overall structural integrity without reliance on casing panels for structural support.

B. Casing Insulation:

1. Materials: Glass-fiber blanket or board insulation, Type I or Type II ASTM C1071.
2. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-11.
3. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.
4. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Static-Pressure Classifications:

1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).

E. Panels, Doors, and Windows:

1. Panels:

a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.

b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow
c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
d. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches (450 mm) wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches (1500 mm).

F. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Construction:

a. Single-wall, galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer sheet.

2. Drain Connection:

a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 (DN 25).

3. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. (10-mm/mm) slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
4. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
5. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
6. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep.
7. Formed sections.
8. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
9. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.5 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

B. Fans: Centrifugal, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.

1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.

a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.

2. Shaft Bearings:

a. Prelubricated and Sealed, Ball Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of 200,000 hours according to ABMA 9.

b. Grease-Lubricated, Tapered-Roller Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block type with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing and an L-50 rated life of 200,000 hours according to ABMA 11.
c. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing and an L-50 rated life of 200,000.

3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.

a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.

4. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
5. Backward-Inclined, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Construction with curved inlet flange, backplate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
6. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
7. Airfoil, Centrifugal Fan Wheels (Plenum Fan Wheels): Smooth-curved inlet flange, backplate, and hollow die-formed airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate; steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
8. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard restrained vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 2 inches (50 mm).
9. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
10. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-)wide by 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet.

a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.

1) Fabric Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
2) Fabric Minimum Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
3) Fabric Minimum Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

C. Drive, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.

D. Drive, Belt: Factory-mounted, V-belt drive, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.

1. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing, dynamically balanced at the factory.
2. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.

3. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick, diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated

E. Motors:

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Enclosure Type: Open, dripproof.
4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
5. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on interior of unit.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

A. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

B. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.

C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

D. Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. AHRI 430 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units and their components in accordance with AHRI 430.

B. AHRI 1060 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units that include air-to-air energy recovery devices in accordance with AHRI 1060.

C. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.

D. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Factory test and rate fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency in accordance with AMCA 210.

E. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.

F. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.

G. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

H. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig (3105-kPa) internal pressure and to minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

D. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

E. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

F. Install filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

G. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), ASTM B88, Type M (ASTM B88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

F. Steam and Condensate Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve at steam supply connections, float and thermostatic trap, and union or flange at each coil return connection. Install gate valve and inlet strainer at supply connection of dry steam humidifiers, and inverted bucket steam trap to condensate return connection.

G. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

## 3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

## 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
11. Install new, clean filters.
12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
5. HEPA Filters, Critical Applications: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to ASME AG-1, pressure-decay method.
6. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.16

# SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
   1. Casings.
   2. Fans.
   3. Motors.
   4. Rotary heat exchangers.
   5. Coils.
   6. Refrigerant circuit components.
   7. Air filtration.
   8. Dampers.
   9. Electrical power connections.
   10. Controls.
   11. Accessories.
   12. Roof curbs.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each RTU.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For RTUs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DESCRIPTION

A. AHRI Compliance:
1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.

B. AMCA Compliance:
1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation.
2. Trane.
3. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.
1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind and seismic performance requirements.

B. Wind-Restraint Performance:
1. Basic Wind Speed: 160 mph.
2. Building Classification Category: IV.
3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

C. Seismic Performance: RTUs, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

## 2.4 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Exterior Casing Thickness: 0.052 inch thick.

B. Supply-Air Fan:
1. Fan Type: Belt driven, double width, forward curved, centrifugal.
2. Fan Type: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal.
3. Airflow: See drawings.
4. External Static Pressure: See drawings.
5. Fan Speed: Variable See drawings.
6. Enclosure Type: Open, dripproof.
7. Enclosure Materials: Rolled steel.
8. Motor Characteristics:
   a. Horsepower: See drawings.
   b. Motor Speed: ECM.

c. Volts: 208.
d. Phase: Poly.
e. Hertz: 60.
f. Full-Load Amperes: See drawings.
g. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: See drawings.
h. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: See drawings.

C. Outdoor-Air-Intake Relief-Air Fan:
1. Airflow: See drawings.
2. Static Pressure: See drawings.
3. Fan Speed: See drawings.
4. Enclosure Type: Open, dripproof.
5. Enclosure Materials: Rolled steel.

D. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Total Cooling Capacity: See drawings.
2. Sensible Cooling Capacity: See drawings.
3. Entering-Air Dry-Bulb Temperature: See drawings.
4. Entering-Air Wet-Bulb Temperature: See drawings.

E. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Ambient-Air Temperature: See drawings.
2. Fan Motor: See drawings.
3. Number of Fans: See drawings.

F. Dampers:
1. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for zero to 30 percent outdoor air, with motorized damper filter.
2. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage or gears and interconnect so dampers operate simultaneously.
3. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
4. Barometric relief dampers.

G. Recirculating-Air Filters:
1. Minimum Face Area: See drawings.
2. One-wide filter racks.
3. Thickness: 2 inches.
4. Pleated with minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 13.
5. Initial Resistance: See drawings.
6. Final Resistance: See drawings.

H. Outdoor-Air Filters:
1. Minimum Face Area: See drawings.
2. One-wide filter racks.
3. Thickness: 1 inch.
4. Filter Type: Glass fiber with minimum 80 percent arrestance, and MERV 8.

I. RTU Electrical Characteristics for Single-Point Connection: See drawings.

## 2.5 CASINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.

B. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with 2-inch foam insulation and seal moisture tight for R-13 performance.

C. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
   1. Corrosion Protection: 750 hours' salt spray test according to ASTM B 117.

D. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
   1. Inside Casing: G-90-coated galvanized steel, 0.034 inch thick, perforated 40 percent free area.

E. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
   2. Thickness: 1 inch injected foam, R-7, galvanized steel liner.
   3. Liner materials shall have airstream surface coated with erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
   4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

F. Plastic Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using rigid heavy plastic polymer, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.

G. Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using stainless-steel sheet 0.025 inch thick, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.
   1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
   2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.

H. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## 2.6 FANS

A. Supply-Air Fans: Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.
   1. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Motor shall be resiliently mounted in the fan inlet.
   2. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Motors shall be installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing.

B. Condenser-Coil Fan: propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.

2.7 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

C. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

D. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 104 deg Fand at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

E. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

F. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

G. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements.

H. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

I. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

J. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

K. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

L. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

M. Insulation: Class F.

N. Code Letter Designation:
   1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

O. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

P. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

Q. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short-time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
5. Retain "Service Factor" Subparagraph below for service factors exceeding NEMA standard for other than open-dripproof motors.
6. Service Factor: 1.15.
7. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
8. NEMA Design: 3R.

## 2.8 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coils from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
4. Coated.

B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coils from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.

C. Electric-Resistance Heating:
1. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium, supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
2. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box.
3. Overcurrent Protection: Manual-reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in each heater stage.
4. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
   a. Magnetic contactors.
   b. Step Controller: Pilot lights and override toggle switch for each step.
   c. SCR Controller: Pilot lights operate on load ratio, a minimum of five steps.
   d. Time-delay relay.
   e. Airflow proving switch.

2.9 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.

B. Refrigeration Specialties:
1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

2.10 AIR FILTRATION

A. Minimum arrestance and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.11 DAMPERS

A. Leakage Rate: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

B. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.

2.12 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.13 CONTROLS

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

B. Basic Unit Controls:
1. Control-voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
a. Heat-cool-off switch.
b. Fan on-auto switch.
c. Fan-speed switch.
d. Automatic changeover.
e. Adjustable deadband.
f. Exposed set point.

g. Exposed indication.
h. Degree F indication.
i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
j. Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.

3. Wall-mounted humidistat or sensor with the following features:
   a. Concealed set point.
   b. Concealed indication.
4. Unit-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
   a. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
   b. DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
   c. Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.

C. DDC Controller:
1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:
   a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
   b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
   c. Fire-Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 283112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."
   d. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on 365-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
4. Unoccupied Period:
   a. Heating Setback: 10 deg F.
   b. Cooling Setback: System off.
   c. Override Operation: Two hours.
5. Supply Fan Operation:
   a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
   b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
   a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure.
   b. Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off.
7. Gas Furnace Operation:
   a. Occupied Periods: Modulate burner to maintain room temperature.
   b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.

8. Electric-Heating-Coil Operation:
   a. Occupied Periods: Modulate coil to maintain room temperature.
   b. Unoccupied Periods: Energize coil to maintain setback temperature.
9. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
   a. Occupied Periods: Open to 25 percent.
   b. Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.
10. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
   a. Morning warm-up cycles.
   b. Occupied Periods: Open to 10 percent fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F. Use outdoor-air temperature to adjust mixing dampers. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
   c. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
11. Terminal-Unit Relays:
   a. Provide heating- and cooling-mode changeover relays compatible with terminal control system required in Section 233600 "Air Terminal Units" and Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

D. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
3. Provide BACnet or LonWorks compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
   a. Adjusting set points.
   b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
   c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
   d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
   e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
   f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
   g. Monitoring cooling load.
   h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
   i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

## 2.14 ACCESSORIES

A. Electric heater with integral thermostat maintains minimum 50 deg F temperature in gas burner compartment.

B. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required.

C. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

D. Remote potentiometer to adjust minimum economizer damper position.

E. Return-air bypass damper.

F. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.

G. Safeties:
   1. Smoke detector.
   2. Condensate overflow switch.
   3. Phase-loss reversal protection.
   4. High and low pressure control.

H. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.

I. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

J. Concentric diffuser with white louvers and polished aluminum return grilles, insulated diffuser box with mounting flanges, and interior transition.

K. Door switches to disable heating or reset set point when open.

L. Outdoor-air intake weather hood with moisture eliminator.

M. Oil separator.

## 2.15 ROOF CURBS

A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
   1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
      a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
      b. Thickness: 2 inches.
   2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
      a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
      b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
      c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
      d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

B. Curb Dimensions: Height of 34 inches mounted on 6” thick concrete pad at ground level.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts.

B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
   1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
   2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
   3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
   4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
   5. Install normal-weight, 3000-psi, compressive strength (28-day) concrete mix inside roof curb, 4 inches thick. Concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified with concrete.

B. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.

C. Where installing piping adjacent to RTUs, allow space for service and maintenance.
   1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
   2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
   3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

# SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - " Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:

a. For Compressor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation; Home Comfort and HVAC Building & Industrial Systems.
2. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.; HVAC Advanced Products Division.
3. Mitsubishi Electric Sales Canada Inc.
4. Trane; a business of American Standard companies.
5. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.

7. Fan Motors:

    a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
    c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:

    a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.

        1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
        2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

    b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
    c. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
    d. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.

        1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.

    e. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
    f. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.

    a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
    b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.

c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.

3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.
8. Coil Guards: Required. Install from factory or field installed.
9. Mount on 6" thick concrete pad and secure for 160 mph wind loading.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

B. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:

1. Compressor time delay.
2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

C. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

E. Drain Hose: For condensate.

F. Additional Monitoring:

1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
3. Monitor economizer cycle.
4. Monitor cooling load.
5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

## 2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. Cooling Capacity: See Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

B. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

Part 1 – General

1.1 System Description

The Air Conditioner system shall be a electric split system with Variable Speed Inverter Compressor technology. The system shall consist of a horizontal discharge, single phase outdoor unit, a matched capacity indoor section that shall be equipped with a wired wall mounted, wireless wall mounted and/or wireless hand held remote controller.

Quality Assurance

**A.** The units shall be tested by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and shall bear the ETL label.

**B.** All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code (N.E.C.) and local codes as required.

**C.** The units shall be rated in accordance with Air-conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute's (AHRI) Standard 210 and bear the ARI Certification label.

**D.** The units shall be manufactured in a facility registered to ISO 9001 and ISO 14001, which is a set of standards applying to environmental protection set by the International Standard Organization (ISO).

**E.** A dry air holding charge shall be provided in the indoor section.

**F.** The outdoor unit shall be pre-charged with R-410a refrigerant for 70 feet (20 meters) of refrigerant tubing.

1.3 Delivery, Storage and Handling

**A.** Unit shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

**B.** The controller shall be shipped separately and shall be able to withstand 105°F storage temperatures and 95% relative humidity without adverse effect.

Part 2 – Warranty

**2.01** The units shall have a manufacturer's parts and defects warranty for a period five (5) year from date of installation. The compressor shall have a warranty of seven (7) years from date of

installation. If, during this period, any part should fail to function properly due to defects in workmanship or material, it shall be replaced or repaired at the discretion of the manufacturer. This warranty does not include labor.

**2.02** Manufacturer shall have over thirty (30) years of continuous experience in the U.S. market.

Part 3 Outdoor Unit Design:

**3.01** The outdoor unit shall be compatible with the four different types of indoor units (ceiling suspending, ducted, wall mounted and four way recessed ceiling cassette). The connected indoor unit shall be of the same capacity as the outdoor unit. *Option: Indoor unit Twinning is allowed as described in 3.02 below.*

3.03 The outdoor unit shall be equipped with an electronic control board that interfaces with the indoor unit to perform all necessary operation functions.

3.04 The outdoor unit shall be capable of cooling operation down to 0°F (-18°C) ambient temperature without additional low ambient controls.

3.05 The outdoor unit shall be able to operate with a maximum height difference of 100 feet (30 meters) between indoor and outdoor units.

3.06 System shall operate at up to a maximum refrigerant tubing length of 100 feet (30 meters) for the 12,000 and 18,000 and 165 feet (50 meters) for the 24,000, 30,000, 36,000, and 42,000 BTU/h units between indoor and outdoor units without the need for line size changes, traps or additional oil.

3.07 The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled, piped, and wired. Each unit must be test run at the factory.

3.2 Cabinet

3.2.1 The casing shall be constructed from galvanized steel plate, finished with an electrostatically applied, thermally fused acrylic or polyester powder coating for corrosion protection.

3.2.2 Mounting feet shall be provided and shall be welded to the base of the cabinet and be of sufficient size to afford reliable equipment mount and stability.

3.2.3 Easy access shall be afforded to all serviceable parts by means of removable panel sections.

3.2.4 The fan grill shall be of ABS plastic.

3.2.5 Cabinet mounting and construction shall be sufficient to withstand 160 MPH wind speed conditions for use in Hurricane condition areas. Mounting, base support, and other installation to meet Hurricane Code Conditions shall be by others.

.

3.3 Fan

3.3.1 Shall be furnished with a single DC fan motor.

3.3.2 The fan blade(s) shall be of aerodynamic design for quiet operation, and the fan motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated.

3.3.3 The outdoor unit shall have horizontal discharge airflow. The fan shall be mounted in front of the coil, pulling air across it from the rear and dispelling it through the front. The fan shall be provided with a raised guard to prevent external contact with moving parts

3.4 Coil

3.4.1 The L shaped condenser coil shall be of copper tubing with flat aluminum fins to reduce debris build up and allow maximum airflow. The coil shall be protected with an integral metal guard.

3.4.2 Refrigerant flow from the condenser shall be controlled by means of an electronic linear expansion valve (LEV) metering device. The LEV shall be controlled by a microprocessor controlled step motor.

3.4.3 All refrigerant lines between outdoor and indoor units shall be of annealed, refrigeration grade copper tubing, ARC Type, meeting ASTM B280 requirements, individually insulated in twin-tube, flexible, closed-cell, CFC-free (ozone depletion potential of zero), elastomeric material for the insulation of refrigerant pipes and tubes with thermal conductivity equal to or better than 0.27 BTU-inch/hour per Sq Ft / °F, a water vapor transmission equal to or better than 0.08 Perm-inch and superior fire ratings such that insulation will not contribute significantly to fire and up to 1" thick insulation shall have a - Flame-Spread Index of less than 25 and a Smoke-development Index of less than 50 as tested by ASTM E 84 and CAN / ULC S-102.

3.5 Compressor

3.5.1 The compressor shall be a DC twin-rotor rotary compressor with Variable Speed Inverter Drive Technology.

3.5.2 The compressor shall be driven by inverter circuit to control compressor speed. The compressor speed shall dynamically vary to match the room load for significantly increasing the efficiency of the system which shall result in significant energy savings.

3.5.3 To prevent liquid from accumulating in the compressor during the off cycle, a minimal amount of current shall be automatically, intermittently applied to the compressor motor windings to maintain sufficient heat to vaporize any refrigerant. No crankcase heater is to be used.

3.5.4 The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator and high pressure safety switch. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

3.6 Electrical

3.6.1 The electrical power of the unit shall be 208volts or 230 volts, single phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.

3.6.2 Power for the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit via Mitsubishi Electric A-Control using three (3) fourteen (14) gauge AWG conductors plus ground wire connecting the units.

3.6.3 The outdoor unit shall be controlled by the microprocessor located in the indoor unit.

The control signal between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC.

3.6.4 The unit shall have Pulse Amplitude Modulation circuit to utilize 98% of input power supply.

3.7 Operating Range:

| Operating Range | | Indoor Air Intake Temperature | Outdoor Air Intake Temperature |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cooling | Maximum | D.B. 95°F (35°C) W.B. 71°F (21.7°C) | D.B. 115°F (46°C) |
| | Minimum | D.B. 67°F (19.4°C) W.B. 57°F (13.9°C) | D.B. 0°F (-18°C)* |

* Requires wind baffle – without wind baffle: D.B. 23°F (-5°C)

3.7.1 Unit shall be able to provide 100% capacity when operating at 0ºF outdoor air temperature and a wind baffle is used.

Part 4 - Indoor Unit Selection and Specification

4.3 Wall Mounted Type

The indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and tested. Contained within the unit shall be all factory wiring and internal piping, control circuit board and fan motor. The unit, in conjunction with the wired wall-mounted controller, wireless wall-mounted controller or wireless handheld controller, shall have a self-diagnostic function, 3-minute time delay mechanism, an auto restart function, and a

test run switch. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes shall be purged with dry nitrogen before shipment from the factory.

4.3.1 Unit Cabinet: The cabinet shall be formed from high strength molded plastic with smooth finish, flat front panel design with access for filter. Cabinet color shall be white – Munsell 1.0Y 9.2/0.2. The unit shall be wall mounted by means of a factory supplied, pre-drilled, mounting plate.

4.3.2 Fan: The indoor unit fan shall be high performance, double inlet, forward curve, direct drive sirocco fan with a single motor. The fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced and run on a motor with permanently lubricated bearings. The indoor fan shall consist of three (3) speeds: Low, Mid, and Hi and Auto. The fan shall have a selectable Auto fan setting that will adjust the fan speed based on the difference between controller set-point and space temperature.

4.3.3 Vane: There shall be a motorized horizontal vane to automatically direct air flow in a horizontal and downward direction for uniform air distribution. The horizontal vane shall significantly decrease downward air resistance for lower sound levels, and shall close the outlet port when operation is stopped. There shall also be a set of vertical vanes to provide horizontal swing airflow movement.

4.3.4 Filter: Return air shall be filtered by means of an easily removable washable filter.

4.3.5 Coil: The evaporator coil shall be of nonferrous construction with pre-coated aluminum strake fins on copper tubing. The multi-angled heat exchanger shall have a modified fin shape that reduces air resistance for a smoother, quieter airflow. All tube joints shall be brazed with PhosCopper or silver alloy. The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory. A condensate pan and drain shall be provided under the coil. An optional drain pan level switch (DPLS1), designed to connect to the control board, shall be provided if required, and installed on the condensate pan to prevent condensate from overflowing.

4.3.6 Electrical: The electrical power of the unit shall be 208 volts or 230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The system shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 187 volts to 253 volts. The power to the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit, using the Mitsubishi Electric A-Control system. For A-Control, a three (3) conductor AWG-14 wire with ground shall provide power feed and bi-directional control transmission between the outdoor and indoor units.

**4.3.8** System Control: The control system shall consist of a minimum of two (2) microprocessors, one on each indoor and outdoor unit, interconnected by a single non-polar two-wire cable. The microprocessor located in the indoor unit shall have the capability of monitoring return air temperature and indoor coil temperature, receiving and processing commands from a wireless or wired controller, providing emergency operation and controlling the outdoor unit. The control signal between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC. Indoor units shall have the ability to control supplemental heat via connector and a 12 VDC output.

4.3.8.2 Remote Controllers

A. Wireless, wall mounted remote controller kit

The Wireless, wall mounted remote controller kit shall consist of a wireless, wall mounted controller, a wireless receiver and a cable to connect the receiver to the indoor unit. The controller shall be white in color with a light-green LCD display and a backlight feature. It shall consist of four Function buttons below the display, and Increase/Decrease Set Temperature buttons and a Hold button to the right of the display. The controller shall have a built-in temperature sensor and a battery holder, using two AA alkaline batteries.

A. Wireless, hand held remote controller

The wireless had held remote controller shall perform input functions necessary to operate the system. There shall be a wireless receiver built in the indoor unit.

The controller shall have a Power On/Off switch, Mode Selector – Cool, Dry, Heat, Auto, and Powerful Modes - Temperature Setting, Timer Control, Fan Speed Select and Horizontal and Vertical Vane control selector. There shall be an i-See® Sensor Area Selector control. The indoor unit shall perform Self-diagnostic Function and Check Mode switching. Temperature changes shall be in 1ºF (0.5ºC) increments with a setting range of 61 to 88ºF (16 to 31ºC).

End of Section 238126.13

# SECTION 260010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.

### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Terms and Units of Measure:
1. A: Ampere, unit of electrical current.
2. AC or ac: Alternating current.
3. AIC: Ampere interrupting capacity.
4. AL, Al, or ALUM: Aluminum.
5. ATS: Automatic transfer switch.
6. AWG: American wire gauge; see ASTM B258.
7. CATV: Community antenna television.
8. CB: Circuit breaker.
9. CU or Cu: Copper.
10. DC or dc: Direct current.
11. DDC: Direct digital control (HVAC).
12. EGC: Equipment grounding conductor.
13. fc: Footcandle, an internationally recognized unit of illuminance equal to one lumen per square foot or 10.76 lx. The simplified conversion 1 fc = 10 lx in the Specifications is common practice and considered adequate precision for building construction activities. When there are conflicts, lux is the primary unit; footcandle is specified for convenience.
14. ft: Foot.
15. GEC: Grounding electrode conductor.
16. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
17. GND: Ground.
18. HACR: Heating, air conditioning, and refrigeration.
19. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
20. HP or hp: Horsepower.
21. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.
22. Hz: Hertz.
23. kcmil or MCM: One thousand circular mils.
24. kV: Kilovolt.
25. kVA: Kilovolt-ampere.
26. MLO: Main lugs only.
27. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
28. RMS or rms: Root-mean-square.
29. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

30. UL: (standards) Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.; (product categories) UL, LLC.
31. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
32. VA: Volt-ampere, unit of complex electrical power.

B. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Raceway Types:

1. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
2. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
3. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
4. PVC: Rigid PVC conduit.
5. PVC-40: Schedule 40 rigid PVC conduit.
6. PVC-80: Schedule 80 rigid PVC Conduit.
7. RGS: See ERMC-S-G.

C. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Single-Conductor and Multiple-Conductor Cable Types:

1. AC: Armored cable.
2. CATV: Coaxial general-purpose cable.
3. CATVP: Coaxial plenum cable.
4. CL2: Class 2 cable.
5. CL2P: Class 2 plenum cable.
6. CL3: Class 3 cable.
7. CL3P: Class 3 plenum cable.
8. MC: Metal-clad cable.
9. MI: Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable.
10. SE: Service-entrance cable.
11. THW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.
12. THHN: Thermoplastic, heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
13. THHW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.
14. THWN: Thermoplastic, moisture- and heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
15. TW: Thermoplastic, moisture-resistant cable.
16. USE: Underground service-entrance cable.

D. Definitions:

1. 8-Position 8-Contact (8P8C) Modular Jack: An unkeyed jack with up to eight contacts commonly used to terminate twisted-pair and multiconductor Ethernet cable. Also called a "TIA-1096 miniature 8-position series jack" (8PSJ), or an "IEC 8877 8-pole jack."
2. Conductor: In accordance with NIST NBS Circular 37 and IEEE standards, in the United States for the purpose of interstate commerce, the definition of "conductor" is (1) a wire or combination of wires not insulated from one another, suitable for carrying an electric current; (2) (National Electrical Safety Code) a material, usually in the form of wire, cable, or bar, suitable for carrying an electric current; or (3) (general) a substance or body that allows a current of electricity to pass continuously along it.
3. Designated Seismic System: A system component that requires design in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE/SEI 7 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
4. Direct Buried: Installed underground without encasement in concrete or other protective material.
5. Enclosure: The case or housing of an apparatus, or the fence or wall(s) surrounding an installation, to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage. Types of enclosures and enclosure covers include the following:

a. Cabinet: An enclosure that is designed for either surface mounting or flush mounting and is provided with a frame, mat, or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
b. Concrete Box: A box intended for use in poured concrete.
c. Conduit Body: A means for providing access to the interior of a conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at a junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.
d. Conduit Box: A box having threaded openings or knockouts for conduit, EMT, or fittings.
e. Cutout Box: An enclosure designed for surface mounting that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the enclosure.
f. Device Box: A box with provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
g. Extension Ring: A ring intended to extend the sides of an outlet box or device box to increase the box depth, volume, or both.
h. Floor Box: A box mounted in the floor intended for use with a floor box cover and other components to complete the floor box enclosure.
i. Floor-Mounted Enclosure: A floor box and floor box cover assembly with means to mount in the floor that is sealed against the entrance of scrub water at the floor level.
j. Junction Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway or cable and provides space for connection and branching of the enclosed conductors.
k. Outlet Box: A box that provides access to a wiring system having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides or the back, or both, for the entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting an outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
l. Pedestal Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover that, when installed as intended, provides a means for typically vertical or near-vertical mounting of receptacle outlets above the floor's finished surface.
m. Pull Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway and provides access for pulling or replacing the enclosed cables or conductors.
n. Recessed Access Floor Box: A floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below the floor surface.
o. Recessed Access Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within a recessed floor box.
p. Termination Box: An enclosure designed for installation of termination base assemblies consisting of bus bars, terminal strips, or terminal blocks with provision for wire connectors to accommodate incoming or outgoing conductors, or both.

6. High-Performance Building: A building that integrates and optimizes on a life-cycle basis all major high-performance attributes, including energy conservation, environment, safety, security, durability, accessibility, cost-benefit, productivity, sustainability, functionality, and operational considerations.
7. Jacket: A continuous nonmetallic outer covering for conductors or cables.
8. Luminaire: A complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp, together with the parts designed to position the light source and connect it to the power supply. It may also include parts to protect the light source or the ballast or to distribute the light.
9. Plenum: A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.
10. Receptacle: A fixed connecting device arranged for insertion of a power cord plug. Also called a power jack.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:

1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's and Owner's written permission.
3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Exercising generators.
b. Emergency lighting.
c. Fire-alarm systems.

1.4 SEQUENCING

A. Conduct and submit results of power system studies before submitting Product Data and Shop Drawings for electrical equipment.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings for Ceiling Areas: Where indicated on drawings, provide reflected ceiling plan(s), supplemented by sections and other details, drawn to scale, in accordance with Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination," on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment and suspension systems will be attached.
3. Size and location of access panels on ceilings.
4. Elevation, size, and route of conduit.
5. Access panels.
6. Luminaires.
7. Fire-alarm devices.
8. Indicate clear dimensions for maintenance access in front of equipment.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Facility EPM Program Binders:

1. Complete Set: On USB media that is clearly and permanently labeled with attached placard on lanyard to prevent misplacement.
2. Volumes 2 and 8: Reproducible hardcopy on archival quality, 28 lb, acid-free, bond paper.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. Provide emergency operation, normal operation, and preventive maintenance manuals for each system, equipment, and device listed below:

2. Include the following information:

a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.
b. User's guides for software and hardware.
c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
e. List of load-current and overload-relay heaters with related motor nameplate data.
f. List of lamp types and photoelectric relays used on Project, with ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
g. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
h. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.
i. EPSS: Manufacturer's system checklists, maintenance schedule, and maintenance log sheets in accordance with NFPA 110.
j. Exterior pole inspection and repair procedures.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:

1. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration prior to the Electrical Preconstruction Conference if accompanied by value analysis data indicating that substitution will comply with Project performance requirements while significantly increasing value for Owner throughout life of facility.
2. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration concurrently with submission of power system study reports when those reports indicate that substitution is necessary for safety of maintenance personnel and facility occupants.
3. Contractor is responsible for sequencing and scheduling power system studies and electrical equipment procurement. After the Electrical Preconstruction Conference, insufficient lead time for electrical equipment delivery will not be considered a valid reason for substitution.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Verify the voltage available at project site with electric utility company prior to submitting any shop drawings for electrical equipment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

END OF SECTION 260010

# SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Fire-alarm/Elevator (referred to as Fire-alarm in this section) wire and cable.
5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
3. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

D. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
3. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
4. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
5. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

## 2.2 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.

C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

## 2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper.
2. Type: Two hole with standard barrels.
3. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders:

1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits:

1. Copper, Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Comply with NFPA 72.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security."

1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system must be installed in a dedicated pathway system.

    a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.

3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
4. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables may not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

F. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1 inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

## 3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

## 3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

## 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260519

# SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding and bonding conductors.
2. Grounding and bonding clamps.
3. Grounding and bonding bushings.
4. Grounding and bonding hubs.
5. Grounding and bonding connectors.
6. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
7. Grounding and bonding busbars.
8. Grounding (earthing) electrodes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

A. Equipment Grounding Conductor:

1. General Characteristics: 600 V, THHN/THWN-2 or THWN-2, copper wire or cable, green color, in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Isolated Equipment Grounding Conductor:

1. General Characteristics: 600 V, THHN/THWN-2 or THWN-2, copper wire or cable, green color with one or more yellow stripes, in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. ASTM - Bare Copper Grounding and Bonding Conductor:
   1. Referenced Standards: Complying with one or more of the following:

      a. Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B3
      b. Concentric-Lay Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B8.
      c. Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B33.
      d. 19-Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B787/B787M.

## 2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING CLAMPS

A. Description: Clamps suitable for attachment of grounding and bonding conductors to grounding electrodes, pipes, tubing, and rebar. Grounding and bonding clamps specified in this article are also suitable for use with communications applications; see Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems," for selection and installation guidelines.

B. Performance Criteria:

   1. Regulatory Requirements:

      a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

   2. Listing Criteria:

      a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.

   3. Sustainability Characteristics:

## 2.3 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSHINGS

A. Description: Bonding bushings connect conduit fittings, tubing fittings, threaded metal conduit, and unthreaded metal conduit to metal boxes and equipment enclosures, and have one or more bonding screws intended to provide electrical continuity between bushing and enclosure. Grounding bushings have provision for connection of bonding or grounding conductor and may or may not also have bonding screws.

B. Performance Criteria:

   1. Regulatory Requirements:

      a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Listing Criteria:

a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.

## 2.4 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONNECTORS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Listing Criteria:

a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.
b. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.

## 2.5 INTERSYSTEM BONDING BRIDGE GROUNDING CONNECTORS

A. Description: Devices that provide means for connecting communications systems grounding and bonding conductors at service equipment or at disconnecting means for buildings or structures.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Listing Criteria:

a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.

## 2.6 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSBARS

A. Description: Miscellaneous grounding and bonding device that serves as common connection for multiple grounding and bonding conductors.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Listing Criteria:

a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.

## 2.7 GROUNDING (EARTHING) ELECTRODES

A. Description: Grounding electrodes include rod electrodes, ring electrodes, metal underground water pipes, metal building frames, concrete-encased electrodes, and pipe and plate electrodes.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. Listing Criteria:

a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment: UL CCN KDER; including UL 467.

C. Rod Electrode:
1. General Characteristics: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 ft.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.

B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of electrical service equipment connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of electrical service equipment only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Custom-Length Insulated Equipment Bonding Jumpers: 6 AWG, 19-strand, Type THHN.

C. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.

D. Bonding Conductor: 4 AWG or 6 AWG, stranded conductor.

E. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.

F. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.

G. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor as indicated on drawings.

1. Bury at least 30 inch below grade.

3.3 SELECTION OF CONNECTORS

A. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

1. Electrodes:

a. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1) Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
2) Use exothermic welds for below-grade connections.

b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to service grounding electrode conductor.

c. Concrete-Encased Electrode (Ufer Ground):

1) Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 ft long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create required length.

2. Grounding at Service:

a. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to ground bus. Install main bonding jumper between neutral and ground buses.

3. Equipment Grounding:

a. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with feeders and branch circuits.

b. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

c. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

d. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

e. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.

1) Grounding Conductor: Bare, copper, not less than 8 AWG.
2) Gates: Must be bonded to grounding conductor with flexible bonding jumper.
3) Barbed Wire: Strands must be bonded to grounding conductor.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Preparation:

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with calibrated torque wrench in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

3. Test completed grounding system at each location where maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before conductors are connected.

    a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method in accordance with IEEE Std 81.
    c. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective components and retest.

## 3.6 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect grounding and bonding cables and equipment from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 260526

# SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch (10 mm) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch (200 mm) on center in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Stainless steel.

3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.

D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
6. Toggle Bolts: Stainless steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION

A. Comply with the following standards for selection and installation of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA NEIS 101
2. NECA NEIS 105.
3. NECA NEIS 111.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA NEIS 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, in accordance with NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

5. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69 or Spring-tension clamps.
6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

END OF SECTION 260529

# SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT-A and Type EMT-SS raceways and elbows.
2. Type EMT-S raceways and elbows.
3. Type IMC raceways.
4. Type LFMC raceways.
5. Type PVC raceways and fittings.
6. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
7. Threaded metal joint compound.
8. Solvent cements.
9. Surface metal raceways and fittings.
10. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
11. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
12. Nonmetallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
13. Termination boxes.
14. Cabinets, cutout boxes, junction boxes, and pull boxes.
15. Cover plates for device boxes.
16. Hoods for outlet boxes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
2. Surface metal raceways.
3. Floor boxes.
4. Cabinets and cutout boxes.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details. Show that floor boxes are located to avoid interferences and are structurally

allowable. Indicate floor thickness at location where boxes are embedded in concrete floors and underfloor clearances where boxes are installed in raised floors.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TYPE EMT-A AND TYPE EMT-SS RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 797A and UL Category Control Number FJMX.

B. Aluminum Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-A) and Elbows:
1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2)
b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Stainless Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-SS) and Elbows:
1. Material: Stainless steel.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2).
b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 TYPE EMT-S RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 797 and UL Category Control Number FJMX.

B. Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:
1. Material: Steel.
2. Options:

a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
b. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2.
c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.3 TYPE IMC RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 1242 and UL Category Control Number DYBY.

B. Steel Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):
1. Options:

a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
b. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2.
c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 TYPE LFMC RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 360 and UL Category Control Number DXHR.

B. Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):
1. Material: Steel.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2).
b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.5 TYPE PVC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 651 and UL Category Control Number DZYR.

B. Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:
1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 1/2.

C. Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:
1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 3/4.

D. Type A Rigid PVC Concrete-Encased Conduit (PVC-A) and Fittings:
1. Dimensional Specifications: Type A.
2. Options:

a. Minimum Trade Size: trade size 3/4.

## 2.6 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.

B. Fittings for Type ERMC, Type IMC, and Type PVC Raceways:
1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
2. Options:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
c. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
d. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

C. Fittings for Type EMT Raceways:
1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number FKAV.
2. Options:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
c. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
d. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

D. Fittings for Type LFMC Raceways:
1. General Characteristics: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DXAS.

## 2.7 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 2419 and UL Category Control Number FOIZ.

## 2.8 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
3. Sustainability Characteristics:

B. Solvent Cements for Type PVC Raceways and Fittings:

## 2.9 SURFACE METAL RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 5 and UL Category Control Number RJBT.

B. Surface Metal Raceways and Fittings with Metal Covers:
1. Options:

a. Galvanized steel base with snap-on covers.
b. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
c. Wiring Channels: Dual. Multiple channels must be capable of housing a standard 20 to 30 A NEMA device flush within the raceway.

## 2.10 WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 870 and UL Category Control Number ZOYX.

B. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:
1. Additional Characteristics:

a. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2. Options:

a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
b. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.11 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.

B. Metallic Outlet Boxes:

1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Options:

    a. Material: Sheet steel.
    b. Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb.
    c. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing up to 70 lb.

C. Metallic Conduit Bodies:

1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.

D. Metallic Device Boxes:

1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Options:

    a. Material: Sheet steel.

E. Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:

1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.

F. Metallic Recessed Access-Floor Boxes and Recessed Floor Box Covers:

1. Description: Floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below floor surface and floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within floor box.

G. Metallic Concrete Boxes and Covers:

1. Description: Box intended for use in poured concrete.

## 2.12 NONMETALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 514C and UL Category Control Number QCMZ.

B. Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes:

1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides or the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.

C. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:

1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.

D. Nonmetallic Recessed Access-Floor Boxes and Recessed Floor Box Covers:

1. Description: Floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below floor surface and floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within floor box.

E. Nonmetallic Concrete Boxes and Covers:

1. Description: Box intended for use in poured concrete.

## 2.13 TERMINATION BOXES

A. Description: Enclosure for termination base consisting of lengths of bus bars, terminal strips, or terminal blocks with provision for wire connectors to accommodate incoming or outgoing conductors or both.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics: UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.

C. Termination Boxes and Termination Bases for Installation on Line Side of Service Equipment:
1. Additional Characteristics: Listed and labeled for installation on line side of service equipment.

D. Termination Boxes and Termination Bases for Installation on Load Side of Service Equipment:
1. Additional Characteristics: Listed and labeled for installation on load side of service equipment.

## 2.14 CABINETS, CUTOUT BOXES, JUNCTION BOXES, AND PULL BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:

a. Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.

b. Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.

B. Indoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:

1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.

C. Indoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:

1. Description: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.

D. Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.

E. Indoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.

F. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:

1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.

G. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:

1. Description: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number CYIV.

H. Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.

I. Outdoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.

J. Outdoor Polymeric Junction and Pull Boxes:

1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
2. Additional Characteristics: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.

## 2.15 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
b. Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.

B. Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
1. Options:

a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.

C. Nonmetallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
1. Options:

a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.

D. Illuminating Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
1. Options:

a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.

## 2.16 HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
2. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards:

1) UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
2) Receptacle, hood, cover plate, gaskets, and seals comply with UL 498 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A, UL 514C, or UL 50E.

3. Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.

B. Retractable or Reattachable Hoods for Outlet Boxes:
1. Options:

a. Provides clear, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.

C. Extra-Duty, While-in-Use Hoods for Outlet Boxes:
1. Additional Characteristics: Marked "Extra-Duty" in accordance with UL 514D.
2. Options:

a. Provides clear, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
b. Manufacturer may combine nonmetallic device box with hood as extra-duty rated assembly.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SELECTION OF RACEWAYS

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Outdoors:

1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC
2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: IMC.

a. Locations less than 8 ft above finished floor.

3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: Corrosion-resistant EMT.
4. Concealed Aboveground: EMT.
5. Direct Buried: PVC-80.
6. Concrete Encased Not in Trench: PVC-80.
7. Concrete Encased in Trench: PVC-80.
8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

C. Indoors:

1. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: EMT. Subject to physical damage includes the following locations:

a. Locations less than 2.5 m above finished floor.
b. Stub-ups to above suspended ceilings.

2. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
4. Damp or Wet Locations: Corrosion-resistant EMT.

5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

D. Raceway Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. ERMC and IMC: Provide threaded type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS

A. Installation Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for installation of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
2. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
3. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
4. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation of steel raceways.
5. Comply with NECA NEIS 111 for installation of nonmetallic raceways.
6. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
7. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts..
8. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:

   a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

B. General Requirements for Installation of Raceways:

1. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
2. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft above finished floor.
3. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
4. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
5. Support conduit within 12 inch of enclosures to which attached.
6. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.

7. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of raceways at the following points:

    a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
    b. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
    c. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
    d. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
    e. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
    f. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

8. Do not install raceways or electrical items on "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
9. Do not install conduits within 2 inch of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
10. Keep raceways at least 6 inch away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
11. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.
12. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

C. Requirements for Installation of Specific Raceway Types:

1. Types EMT-A, ERMC-A, and FMC-A:

    a. Do not install aluminum raceways or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

2. Types ERMC and IMC:

    a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Types FMC and LFMC:

    a. Comply with NEMA RV 3. Provide a maximum of 72 inch of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

4. Type PVC:

    a. Do not install Type PVC conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 122 deg F. Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where installed in a trench

outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C conductors are permitted.

b. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding and fittings.

D. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Provide EMT, IMC, or ERMC for raceways.
2. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

E. Raceway Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. ERMC-S-PVC: Provide only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Provide sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
2. EMT: Provide compression fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
3. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
4. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

F. Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:

1. Seal raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

B. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2 inch (50 mm) radius control at bend points.

C. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inch (1200) mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are unacceptable support methods.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES

A. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.

B. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

C. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.

D. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

E. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

F. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.

G. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.

H. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

I. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

J. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

K. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

L. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.

M. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:

1. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
2. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

## 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Boxes: Remove construction dust and debris from device boxes, outlet boxes, and floor-mounted enclosures before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.

END OF SECTION 260533

# SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Labels.
2. Bands and tubes.
3. Tapes and stencils.
4. Tags.
5. Signs.
6. Cable ties.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ASME A13.1.

B. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards; 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs and tags; and the following:

1. Fire-protection and fire-alarm equipment, including raceways, must be finished, painted, or suitably marked safety red.

C. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:

1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.

D. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color must be factory applied.
2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.
c. Phase C: Blue.

3. Colors for 240 V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.

4. Colors for 480Y/277 V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Brown.
b. Phase B: Orange.
c. Phase C: Yellow.

5. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.

E. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on orange background.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

C. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.

D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

END OF SECTION 260553

# SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electronic time switches.
2. Electromechanical dial-time switches.
3. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, flexible mounting.
4. Outdoor photoelectric switches, low voltage.
5. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
6. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
7. Digital timer light switch.
8. Outdoor motion sensors.
9. Lighting contactors.
10. Conductors and cables.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:

a. Occupancy sensors.
b. Vacancy sensors.

2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Special Extended Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer warrant that installed lighting control devices perform in accordance with specified requirements and agree to repair or replace, including labor, materials, and equipment, devices that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.

2. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRONIC TIME SWITCHES

A. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Contact Rating:30 A inductive, 240 V(ac).

3. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
4. Astronomic Time: All channels.
5. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
6. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, SOLID STATE, FLEXIBLE MOUNTING

A. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 20 amps, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.

1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
3. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.

4. Mounting: Twist lock complies with ANSI C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

## 2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Separate power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch.

    a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

5. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A.
6. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20 A load at 120 and 277 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc), 150 mA, Class 2 power source.
7. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

8. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
9. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
10. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

B. PIR Type: Wall mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch.
2. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted 48 inch above finished floor.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.

2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6 inch minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. inch, and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inch in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inch/s.

## 2.4 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.

1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA load at 120 V, 1200 VA load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.

## 2.5 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.

## 2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONTACTORS

A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.

C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

END OF SECTION 260923

# SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

B. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
5. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.

6. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

B. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Recommended procedures for installing panelboards.
2. Recommended torque settings for bolted connections on panelboards.
3. Recommended temperature range for energizing panelboards.

C. Sample warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Special Tools: Furnish to Owner proprietary equipment, keys, and software required to operate, maintain, repair, adjust, or implement future changes to panelboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1. Height: 7 ft maximum.
2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.

D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Tin-plated copper.

E. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
1. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

F. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD.

2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inch high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

C. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

3. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
4. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Panelboards: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NEMA PB 1.1.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

E. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.

F. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

G. Circuit Directory:

1. Provide directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.

    a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.

2. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

    a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.

3. Create directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

END OF SECTION 262416

# SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
2. General-grade single straight-blade receptacles.
3. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
4. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
5. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for occupancy sensors, timers, control-voltage switches, and control-voltage dimmers.
3. Section 262726.11 "General-Use Switches, Dimmer Switches, and Fan-Speed Controller Switches" for additional wiring device products.
4. Section 262726.31 "General-Grade Single Straight-Blade Receptacles" for additional wiring device products.
5. Section 262726.33 "General-Grade Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacles" for additional wiring device products.
6. Section 262726.51 "Connectors, Cords, and Plugs" for additional wiring device products.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Toggle switches.
2. Key lock switches.
3. Maintained-contact switches.
4. Momentary-contact switches.
5. Dimmer switches.
6. Fan-speed controllers.
7. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
8. Duplex straight-blade receptacles with integral switching means.
9. Receptacles with GFCI device.
10. Locking receptacles.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Wiring diagrams for duplex straight-blade receptacles with integral switching means.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Instructions: Record copy of official installation[ **and testing**] instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Dimmers.
2. Fan-speed controllers.
3. Single straight-blade receptacles.
4. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
5. Receptacles with GFCI device.
6. Locking receptacles.

B. Sample warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER SWITCHES

A. Toggle Switch:
1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.

3. Accessories:

a. Cover Plate: Stainless Steel.
b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

4. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.

5. Options:

a. Device Color: As indicated on architectural Drawings.

b. Configuration:
1) 120-277 V, 20 A.

## 2.2 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:
1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.

3. Options:

a. Device Color: As indicated on architectural Drawings.
b. Configuration:

1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.

4. Accessories:

a. Cover Plate: Stainless Steel.
b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

## 2.3 RECEPTACLES WITH GROUND-FAULT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. General-Grade, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with GFCI Device:
1. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. General Characteristics:

a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXX, UL 498, UL 943, UL 1699, and UL Subject 1699A.

3. Options:

a. Device Color: As indicated on architectural Drawings.
b. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.

4. Accessories:

a. Cover Plate: Stainless Steel.
b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receptacles:

1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.

4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

END OF SECTION 262726

# PART 1 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

## 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Enclosures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Include evidence of qualified electrical testing laboratory listing for series rating of installed devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
1. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate fuses.
2. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Circuit breakers must be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components must be completely isolated from handle and accessory mounting area.

B. Circuit breakers must have toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. Circuit-breaker handle must be over center, be trip free, and reside in tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon must be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with push-to-trip button, located on face of circuit breaker to mechanically operate circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

C. MCCBs must be equipped with device for locking in isolated position.

D. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with required interrupting capacity for available fault currents.

E. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

## 2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.

C. Enclosures designated as UL 50E Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K must have dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of enclosure cover when circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning circuit breaker ON when enclosure cover is open.

D. UL 50E Type 7/9 enclosures must be furnished with breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Preparation:

B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
c. Verify that unit is clean.
d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

1) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

C. Tests and Inspections for Molded-Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
d. Verify that unit is clean.
e. Operate circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

1) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.

D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 323116

TERMITE CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes soil treatment with termiticide.

B. Related Sections include the Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Service Life of Soil Treatment: Soil treatment by use of a termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For termiticide. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

B. Product Certificates: For termite control products, signed by product manufacturer.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer of termite control products.

D. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's record information, including the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Brand name and manufacturer of termiticide.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes, and rates of application used.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

F. Meeting Records: Minutes of pre-installation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Formulate and apply termiticides according to the EPA Registered Label.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products through one source.

D. Pre installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" to schedule application of termiticide products.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 COORDINATION

Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Special Warranty:

1. Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Continuing Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' continuing service including monitoring, inspection, and re-treatment for occurrences of termite activity. Provide a standard continuing service agreement. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period; and terms for future renewal options.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Bayer Corporation; Premise 75.
2. Dow AgroSciences LLC; Dursban TC.
3. FMC Corporation, Agricultural Products Group; Talstar, Prevail FT, or Torpedo.

2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

Termiticide: Provide an EPA-registered tenniticide complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3. I EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.

B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer’s written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.

B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.

C. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EP A-Registered Label for products.

### 3.4 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix soil treatment tenniticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.

1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.

2. Foundations: Adjacent soil including soil along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls, along both sides of interior partition walls, around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab, and around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; also

along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing. Avoid soil washout around footings.

3. Masonry: Treat voids.

4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.

B. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.

C. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA Registered Label instructions.

D. Post warning signs in areas of application.

E. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

END OF SECTION